

# **Night Magick**

BY

Phillip D. Williams

## **INTRODUCTION**

1. What is Night Magick?
2. Who is a Night Magician?
3. Why Practice Night Magick?
4. How to Study the Lore

### **CHAPTER II**

#### **THE NIGHT MAGICIAN**

5. Her/His Life
6. The Apprentice's Unfoldment
7. Night Consciousness

### **CHAPTER III**

#### **BEGINNING NIGHT MAGICK**

8. Standards and Principles of Practicing Night Magick
9. A Night Magician's Tools and Weapons
10. Your Magickal Night Name
11. Night Pillar
12. Invocation to Night Magick

### **CHAPTER IV**

#### **Earth Magick**

13. The Earth Realm
14. Night Breathing
15. The Night Magician's Meditation
16. The Realm of Vibration
17. Night Centers and the Physical and Etheric Bodies
18. The Power of Sound
19. Earth Rite
20. The Physical Realm of Death

### **CHAPTER V**

#### **WATER MAGICK**

21. The Water (Astral) Realm
22. The Astral Body and Exercises for Emotional Control
23. Astral Aura, Color, and Exercises
24. The Higher Night Centers and Exercises
25. The Dream Realm
26. Astral Guides, Oracleship, and Trance
27. The Moon and Its Rites
28. Water Rites
29. Night Projection

### **CHAPTER VI**

#### **AIR MAGICK**

30. The Mental Realm
31. Air Rite
32. Power of Thought
33. Your Silent Magician
34. Hypnotism and Self
35. A Night Magician's Pendulum
36. A Night Magician's Crystal Globe
37. Psychometry
38. Telepathy
39. Mental Projection
40. Creative Visualization

### **CHAPTER VII**

#### **Night (Fire) Magick**

41. The Night (Fire) Realm
42. The Solar, Planetary, and Lunar Powers
43. The Night Guild
44. Night Powers
45. Night Flames
46. Night Rites
47. Night Healing
48. Immortality: Transmigration and Transmutation
49. Night Magicians: Past, Present, and Future

## APPENDIXES

### APPENDIX A

### INVOCATIONS, HYMNS, POEMS, AND PRAYERS

#### APPENDIX B

### CANDLE COLOR COMBINATION AND THE NIGHT TEACHERS

### NIGHT MAGICK

There was the Clear Light, the Void, and It alone was. The One Mind, apart of nothing, yet containing everything, it alone the True Creator. Formless, Nameless, without Definition, yet flowing through all that has form, name, and definition. From the One Mind there came Two Matrixes, two sides of the same coin, Night and Day. Twin Soul Creators to each side, the Yin-Yang of Night and Yang-Yin of Day. And so the Night and Day of the Omniverse was born. I AM Night. I AM Darkness that flows through the Night. I AM THE ETERNAL DARKNESS. Yin-Yang created, Goddess-God of Night, Daughter-Son of Darkness, Eternal Creator of the Nightverse. By the Dark Power and Energy, by the Night Magick was all created in the Nightverse.

The Ancient Dragons were first taught and they taught the others and so creation began throughout the Nightverse. And so by the Dark Power, by Night Magick was everything created flowing through the created instruments of the ETERNAL DARKNESS. Night's beginning was good and the Earth was created a jewel in the Crown of Night.

The Dragons came with other races and created the beginning Night Races of the Earth. And time flowed and the races prospered and their depth in Night Consciousness deepened. But then as so often happens the Day came to war with the Night and the Earth changed.

The Day gods were young and wanted the Earth for its wealth of minerals and beauty and destroyed the Night Races. They created human bodies as mindless, soulless slaves to gather this wealth. But the Great Night Dragon, Tiamat, Goddess-God of the World, saw what had happened and ensouled the human bodies placing a part of its Great Night Soul into each human body. But since then the Day gods have warred with Tiamat for control of the human souls.

The Day gods have spread false teachings about the origin of the human souls and the Night Dragon. They have tried to destroy the Night religions of old that glorified the Yin Spirit of the Earth and the beauty of life. Long has the war continued and now is the time for a rebirth of Night Magick on Earth.

And so I, the Eternal Night, have ensouled the Earth to supercharge it with NIGHT MAGICK. I have come to Earth, through a human instrument, to spread my magickal teachings. To teach the human soul the truth of its origins and re-awaken the Night within. To make humankind co-creators with the Eternal Night through the teachings of Night Magick.

## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION

#### 1. What is Night Magick?

I can only imagine at this point that you are about to put down this book and run scared due to words like Night, Darkness, Dark Power, and the title of the book itself, Night Magick. Before we begin learning about Night Magick I believe it will help to understand what I mean by these "night" terms.

To begin, there is the Void. The Buddhist call it the Clear Light as opposed to "white" or "black". The Taoist refer to it as the Tao and Christians refer to it as God the Father. The Void is the indivisible eternal energy. The Void is beyond polarities of energy such as positive/negative or Yang/Yin. It is God Mind. It is everywhere and through every thing yet remains separate from

every thing. That is, it does not become a part of any one thing such as the soul does with the body. The Void does not think like you and I yet it is "all thought". It is the most mystical of concepts and God the Father is perhaps the poorest term for the Void. The Void is not a Father, it isn't male or female, the void contains creation yet it does not assume a role within creation. The more I try to describe to you the Void the less I actually accomplish in doing so. The Void cannot truly be described but only experienced. The Void begins with its major principles who spring into being, the Ultimate Yin and Yang of the Omniverse.

The original premise is that the Yang represents the Male Creative force in the Omniverse and Yin the Female Passive force in the Omniverse. A more accurate premise is that there is an Ultimate Yin and Ultimate Yang each complete in and of itself. That each Ultimate force has the Creative Force within it and that there are twin systems created by this. We have two separate creation matrixes separated by a neutral zone. There is an Ultimate Yang System and an Ultimate Yin System. The Earth is a part of the Ultimate Yin System.

The Ultimate Yin System is made up of many races. The human race is not alone in the Omniverse. The most ancient race existing in form today is the Ancient Dragon. The Ancient Dragons are not the Dragons you read of in mythology. The Ancient Dragons are far beyond the other races in total development. Their science, philosophy, and religion is based on the One Mind and the Void. An Ancient Dragon came to Earth and guided the development of the planet and ultimately ensouled the World. Working with other races, the Dragon created a new race to populate the world. This was long before the human race. The creation of the human race is a sad tale.

The races of the world go through a repeated pattern of creation, sustainment, and then destruction. Out of the old race a new race is born more highly evolved than the last. The human race though was created out of greed. There came to Earth a high technologically advanced race from the Yang system. They came to make the Earth their own world and to rape it of its resources. The advanced race, who we find described in greek, roman, Norse, and other mythologies as the gods or as in the Bible, Jehovah or in the Koran, Allah, created the human race to be mindless slaves. This was so the gods could live like gods. The Ancient Dragon would not permit such an abomination and so it ensouled the human bodies and the human race had its beginning as an ensouled Yin race. The Yang gods were quite upset by this for the human race became a sentient Yin race and had to be treated as such. For some time the gods tried to continue to control man through their technology and set up religions based on worship of the Yang principle and the gods. These religions taught absolute obedience to the gods or God and the worship of the Yang principle. The Yang religion taught the domination of the Earth and its creatures by humankind. The Yang religion taught the hate and sin of the human body and procreation. This always included the subservience of the human woman to the human male for God was male and superior and woman was the seducer and corrupter of man. The leader of the gods was always a male god such as Zeus. They also taught that the Yin principle of the Omniverse was chaos and evil. That the Dark principle was a destructive force out to destroy mankind and the Earth. They personified the Yin principle as Satan, Lucifer, Loki, Pan, Iblis, or Kali and created places of damnation for those who did not worship the Yang principle. All this was done to maintain control over humankind and promote the Yang principles through fear. At some point the Yang gods were required to quit having direct contact with man perhaps when they used nuclear weapons on Sodom and Gomorrah as recorded in the Bible. Whatever the reason, only periodic contact was allowed and that through special religious messengers such as Krishna, Zoroaster, Jesus, and Mohammed. If you examine the major Yang religions you will see a reoccurring theme of an evil servant giving humankind the knowledge of good and evil and humankind turned away from Paradise. These religions always worship the "White Light of God" and place man not woman in so-called dominion of the Earth. Woman, the Yin-Yin Principle in the Omniverse, was placed in deep shame and subservience to man the Yang-Yang principle. Yet on Earth, man is Yin-Yang not Yang-Yang by virtue of the indwelling Night Spirit of the Planet.

Every soul and spirit (terms we'll examine more fully later) of the human race is a fragment of the indwelling Soul and Spirit of the Planet Earth. In essence, the Soul and Spirit of the Planet Earth is God to humankind. That Soul and Spirit is the Ancient Dragon that originally came to Earth and saved the human body from a mindless existence enslaved to the Yang race. The Ancient Dragon is the Creator and Ensouler of this World and of each and every one of us. The Dragon of this World is the Night Force. The Dragon of this world is Yin.

Yin is a primal force established in the Omniverse in parallel with Yang. This planet is a Yin world. The presence of Yang and the worship and practice of the Yang principle in religions such as Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, Mormonism has led to many evils in the world. It has led to the subservience of women. It has led to humankind following a spiritual path of

Yang in direct opposition to its Soul and Spirit's magickal orientation. This has led to much inner confusion by humankind and this world's instability and patterns of destruction and chaos are a direct response to this.

The Earth is a very sick body.

Until you achieve a very, very advance point in your evolution, you'll have a physical body of some kind. The Soul of this world has the Earth as its body and humankind is killing it. This so-called dominion by man has poisoned the streams, rivers, lakes, and oceans of the Earth, the Earth's circulatory system. The air, Earth's respiratory system, is poisoned. The soil itself is poisoned, stripped mined, littered, great holes filled with non-biodegradable products. The trees and forests destroyed wantonly, savagely, and soon the oxygen they generate will not be enough to sustain life. Acid rain instead of the clean rains. Underground nuclear testing disrupting the physical and etheric shell of the Earth Body not to speak of the Astral and Higher Body damage done by this intensely Yang energy. Ozone destroying the upper atmosphere and the protection from the harmful ultraviolet radiation. Wanton destruction of wildlife of which some is inhabited by races of greater advancement than humankind. Just how much longer will man act as a deadly cancer in the Earth's body. At the rate of destruction it will not be much longer before humankind as you know it will cease to exist and that is exactly what the Yang forces in the Omniverse want.

Then they have the right to come and claim the Earth as they did before as recorded in the Old Testament of the Bible and in other ancient myths. Humankind will once more find itself enslaved and bowing before a technologically higher race as it was in the ancient days. This must not happen! This is what Night Magick is all about.

Teaching you the truth about your existence. Placing back into your hands the truth concerning the Yin Primal Force of which you are a part. To give to you the tools to balance yourself and the Earth in Oneness with the Night Spirit. What is Night Magick?

Night Magick is the arts, rites, practices, and teachings of a Night Magician. Night Magick is the lore of a Night Magician. The lore must be learned not only with the eyes and brain but also with the heart. It is a way of life and must be lived to be fully understood. Night Magick is founded on the ancient knowledge and wisdom that preceded the history of the Earth. Though Night Magick is based on ancient teachings it is no less applicable to the modern world. Night Magick is a magickal discipline. Through its rules, instruction, and exercises it provides for you a code of conduct and a way of living that brings to you the greatest possible Yin growth. It is a philosophy. The goal of a Night Magician is the Eternal Pursuit of Wisdom and Knowledge based on the Yin Primal Force. It is a science. For through the study and practice of the lore, you will gain greater knowledge and wisdom. Through Night Magick you will achieve perfection in your physical, emotional, mental, and magickal natures. You will become the sum of all that you can ever be. You will become the Night Oversoul in Consciousness and Action. Night Magick is a lore that will achieve for you your return to the Night. I know this has been fast and furious for you.

For many of you, this is the first time you have been given such information or even thought about what has been so far discussed. I promise you that I will go into greater depths on the subjects I treated briefly and this will help you understand more thoroughly. But I wanted to make sure you understood from the onset the principles Night Magick is based on.

Night Magick is magick based upon the Sacred Principle of Yin. It is based on the Dark Force that flows through your being. If you still have doubts read on and test the knowledge you find here. You are not asked to accept anything in this book on blind faith. You will not be asked to accept anything without first putting it to test and validating the truth. If you find some of the information hard to understand then reflect on it for awhile. Put away the information you find hard to accept for another time of reflection. Place into your mind and soul only those things that you have tried, tested, and found to be truth for yourself. But at all times, keep an open mind. That is all I ask. I think its time now to discuss who is a Night Magician.

## 2. Who is a Night Magician?

Who is a Night Magician?

A Night Magician is Absolute Love. They are the embodiment of Dark Love that has its origin in the Void. They are Dark Love that is free from any restrictions, limitations, or exceptions. They are Dark Love free from dependence upon external definitions for its existence. They are Dark Love born out of Absolute Innocence. A Night Magician is Absolute Love.

A Night Magician is Strong Willed. They are the willpower necessary to move mountains. They are the willpower needed to overcome the impossible. They are the willpower it takes to overcome life's challenges and defeats. They are the willpower it requires to wield Night Magick against their enemies and win. They are the willpower of the Eternal Darkness. A

**Night Magician is Strong Willed.**

**A Night Magician is Self-disciplined.** They will undergo a thousand days and nights of deprivation to achieve their goals. They are hardest upon their selves in achieving self-mastery of Night Magick. They are the self-discipline it requires to overcome failure for a thousandth time and once more attempt the challenge. They live in a self-imposed world of self-discipline in order to achieve the ultimate state of being. A Night Magician is Self-disciplined.

**A Night Magician is Patience.** They are the patience required while acquiring self-mastery. They are the patience needed when building dreams of success. They are the patience required when waiting for the destruction of their enemies. They are the patience the Night Spirit has in each of us and our magickal climb. A Night Magician is Patience.

**A Night Magician is a Pillar of Strength.** They are the rock that will not be moved as the waves of strife come crashing over. They are the strength needed to overcome the Forces of Yang. They are the strength required to achieve success in life. A Night Magician is a Pillar of Strength.

**A Night Magician is Free of Self-limitations.** They are not bound by the chains of limited thinking. They do not see themselves as just human beings made of flesh and bones but as Ones, pure in Night Spirit, that transcend time and space. Their emotions do not master their lives. They are the master of their emotions. They are the calm, silent, and steady Soul of the Night. They are the Night Soul. They are the Dark Masters of Life. A Night Magician is Freedom.

**A Night Magician is Deep Silence.** They are the Deep Silence of the Night. They are like the silence that follows the storm. They are the silence that is found in the quiet of the home. They are the silence of the Void. They are the silence of the Night Soul. They are the silence of the Night Dragon's sacred flight. A Night Magician is Deep Silence.

**A Night Magician is Dark Knowledge.** They are knowledge found through intellectual pursuit of the hidden mysteries. They are knowledge born out of intelligence and critical thinking. They are knowledge discovered through intuition, meditation, and reflection. A Night Magician is Dark Knowledge.

**A Night Magician is Nature.** They are the flowers that bloom and the trees that bud in the Spring. They are the mighty winds that blow across the world and the gentle rains that give life to all things that grow. They are the melodic voice of the birds who sing. They are the heat and cool waters that are found in the months of Summer. They are the storms, tornadoes, and hurricanes. They are the frog churumping and the Night Owl hooting. They are the short summer nights. They are the Artist's brush that paints the leaves of Fall. They are the harvest of the crops. They are the stacked corn stalks of the fields and the pumpkins in the window sills. They are the squirrels and chipmunks gathering up the nuts in readiness for the long cold Winter months. They are every snow flake dancing and icicle hanging. They are the white bunny and fox who does the chasing. They are the never ending cycle of Nature. A Night Magician is Nature.

**A Night Magician is Life.** They are passionate for their love of Life in all its aspects. They are adventurous and courageous loving the challenge of Life. Yet they are practical, cautious and responsible with Life. For them, Life should be faced with daring, boldness, and energy. They loathe restriction and love the freedom found in Life. They are the Artisans of Life. A Night Magician is Life.

**A Night Magician is the Night Soul in Action on Earth.** It abides in their conscience in all the things said or done. They are the Creative Force of the Night Soul in the way they create new life. They are the Preservative Force of the Night Soul holding the world in perfect balance. They are the Destructive Force of the Night Soul tearing away the illusions of the Yang. They are the Regenerative Force of the Night Soul rebuilding the true Night World. They are Night Soul by the way they remove us out of life's confusion. The eyes that see us, the ears that listen to us, the mouth that speaks words of strength, the heart that pours out absolute love to us, the strong arms and hands that hold us near, and the legs that take us far on our way, through all of these there is the Night Spirit. A Night Magician is the Night Soul in Action on Earth.

**Who is a Night Magician?** A Night Magician can be likened to a multifaceted stone of Amethyst or Emerald of incomparable beauty. The Night Magician is as beautiful and rare as a Black Diamond. I have just discussed many of those facets that make-up a Night Magician but if I kept on writing for days I would never be able to cover all of them. Each facet of the Night Magician can best be known by living it; by becoming a Night Magician. The facets I have been covering are those found in the Night Magician who has been long on the path and has attained much. It is anyone who will dedicate her or his life to the Night Principles found in this work. You have to dedicate your lives to becoming all that I described a Night Magician to be in the

beginning of this topic. The teachings must again be practiced actively in your life as they were practiced in the ancient civilizations that first came into being here on Earth. A Night Magician is one who will put these teachings found in this work into practice in her or his life and live them fully.

A Night Magician is one who abides fully in the Consciousness of the Night. They are the total embodiment of strength, solitude, patience, intelligence, courage and adventure. They are beings free of self-limitations. They are ones who have dedicated their life to self-freedom and perfection. They are the Night Soul in Action. There is no greater purpose in life then to be a Night Magician. Now that you have some idea of who a Night Magician is and what Night Magick is about, I would like to discuss why you should practice Night Magick.

### 3. Why Practice Night Magick?

Why practice Night Magick? To begin with, there is great joy and happiness in being a Night Magician and practicing the lore of Night Magick. In practicing Night Magick you are going to be able to see the results of your labor; and the results of that labor are going to bring you more happiness and joy then you can imagine. You are going to derive a great sense of personal satisfaction and accomplishment through the practice of Night Magick. Practicing Night Magick is exciting and adventurous.

Your life will be filled with adventure and excitement the likes of which you've never known. It is very sad that so many people's lives are filled with boredom needlessly. Through Night Magick avenues of travel, business adventure, intellectual pursuit, personal adventure, and magickal conquests will open up. Night Magick will bring you personal success.

Personal success can be measured in many ways. How about success in marriage, finances, college, business? Or personal success in health, vitality, and longevity. Change is why you practice Night Magick. What changes will Night Magick make in your life?

Everything! Through the practice of Night Magick not a thing in your life will go untouched.

You practice Night Magick for these changes in your life. I can go a long way in this book to answer specifically what kind of changes are going to take place. But ultimately it is you, after study and practice of Night Magick, who will be able to give all the answers. Let's begin answering the question of what kind of changes you can expect to see in your life?

The first changes you will see, by practicing the lore, is improvement in your physical life. You are going to have better health and a sense of renewed purpose in life. You are going to achieve this through the practice of Night Breathing and Meditation. As you go along here there will be new terms that you have never seen before, but be patient, for as you proceed through this book, you will learn them all. Your life is going to be deeply enriched and health improved by the use of colors and self-healing that you will learn. You will learn to develop and use the power centers of your body. Once you have accomplished this, you will unleash untold power of fire and life throughout your body. This will allow you to become the master of your life; "the Captain of your Soul". You will then learn to overcome your fear of death and to recognize it for what it is, a doorway into a new world. All this you can achieve through Night Magick, but there is much, much more.

Through the practice of Night Magick you are going to become the master of your emotions. No longer will your emotions rule you, but you will rule them. You will learn, in dealing with your emotions and emotional body, the ability to be able to see the higher realms. You will be able to recognize those dreams in which a message of help and inspiration is contained and to interpret it. You will come to know your magickal teachers and guides and ultimately you will be able to travel in the Astral Realm. This you will achieve through the mastery of your emotions. There is even more to learn through the practice of Night Magick.

Through Night Magick, you will master the powers of your mind. You will achieve thought control and be able to reach into your subconscious mind. Your subconscious mind is the repository for all that you have ever known. Think of what it will mean to have access to this great storage vault of information. You will learn to use the pendulum and crystal globe and never have questions unanswered. You will achieve psychometric and telepathic abilities. Above all, you will be able to create into your world "ANYTHING" that you desire to see in it through correct invocation and imagination. The mind is a fascinating creation boundless in power and energy. It is multidimensional creating life in all its forms. The mind is truly a wonderful thing when you have mastered its powers and employ it as the valuable tool it is. But over and beyond the powers of the mind and its realm, lies the power and realm of the Night Soul.

There are no greater powers then those of the Night Soul. It is your objective, through Night Magick, to learn to use and manipulate these powers of the Night Soul for your benefit. Through Night Magick, you will learn to travel into the Night Realm while still here upon Earth. You will learn the highest form of healing. You will be able to do this healing for all

whom you know. You will learn to do the Night Rites to achieve true magickal progress. Your progress will be highly accelerated through the Night Rites. The ultimate goal of Night Magick is the achievement of Night Consciousness.

There is no higher goal than this. The true union with your Oversoul, the perfection of Self, this is the consummation of Night Magick. When you have achieved Night Consciousness, you are of greatest service to yourself and the perfect offering unto the Night Soul. I stated before that I would discuss the modern applications of Night Magick in today's world. I have already covered some of those applications.

You will have good health, less tension and nervousness, and a stronger mind. You can use Night Magick at your everyday job. Through Night Magick, you will develop great insight that will go a long way in assisting you in problem solving. If you are out on the highway in your car you will be steered clear of trouble. You will avoid accidents and traffic problems. You will be able to stay in touch with friends and love ones and know when they are in trouble or need through Night Magick. If you have a need then you can fulfill that need by using the lore of Night Magick. If you have lost items and wish to have them back, then you can do so. If you need to look forward into the future and see the realm of possibilities, then you can do so. The things you see are only possibilities and you can decide whether they will happen or not. These are only a few of the many applications for Night Magick in the modern world. The applications are limited only as your imagination is limited. As you learn to see with the foresight and insight that you will develop through Night Magick, your life will indeed change. Night Magick will bring you a new way of living. It will seem to you that before, you were only existing. As I have said, your physical, emotional, and mental health will vastly improve. You will become the planner and controller of your life. Your physical surroundings will increase in wealth. You will also acquire magickal wealth from practicing Night Magick. You will gain a deep sense of magickal accomplishment and growth by making it a part of your life. You will become a positive and dynamic force in your life. Through Night Magick, you will leave nothing or no one untouched. Night Magick, if practiced and lived with dedication, vigor, and vitality will achieve all of this. You must not be mistaken that all of this will occur at once. It will take patience and effort on your part to make it all happen, but happen it will. One day you will look back on your old life and wonder how you ever made it from day to day. But with Night Magick, a new day dawns in your life.

Before you begin to study Night Magick I want to introduce a special way to study this work that will help insure your understanding of the lore and success as a Night Magician.

#### 4. How to Study the Lore

There is a specific way to study the lore of Night Magick. If you have been just reading this book through as any novel, then you have been doing it the wrong way. This book is not a novel which can be read through quickly and lightly and expect to gain anything from it. When you study the lore in this book it must be done one topic at a time. Also, each topic must be taken in order as it appears written in this book. Do not skip around in this book between the different topics. Each topic was designed to be a building block upon which to find success in the next topic. There is more to studying the lore than just sitting down and reading. Your studying will require self-discipline, patience, perseverance, and a prescribed technique for learning. Let's examine that technique for learning.

To begin with, you must prepare the place that you are going to study in. If you study in the middle of a busy living room with the children shouting and the TV blaring you aren't going to retain or accomplish very much. So to begin with, you are going to find, what you will term, your "Magician's Study".

This is a physical room that you can call your own. It must be a quiet place and somewhere where you can be alone and uninterrupted. In this room you will want a place where you can both sit and lay down as necessary. This room will not only be used for studying but also performing the many exercises, rites, and practices of Night Magick. This is your Magician's Study. Now, you must attend to your own self-preparation.

You must prepare yourself so that you are in the right frame of mind to do some serious studying. To get into the proper mood, you should begin by taking a bath. This will help you to relax and wash away the cares and worries of the day. If you think of it, your entire thoughts and emotions when you come home are filled with the tensions and problems of work. The feeling around you is made up of a problem laden job and world. Literally, a bath or shower will do a lot to remove this tension and stress from out of your feelings. Then you should dress to be comfortable in clean, loose fitting clothes or your robes that you will learn to make later. Let's retire to your study.

When you go to your study it should be at approximately the same time of day each day. Do this

if at all possible. Then you should sit down in a very comfortable chair or couch and relax as much as possible. When you have learned to do relaxing exercises and "Night Breathing" then you should do these before you begin to read. For now just relax and let all the worry and tension of the day flow away. Once you are sufficiently relaxed it is time to pick-up the book. As stated earlier, you are going to read each topic in order. To begin reading a topic, read it through the first time quickly and lightly. The first time you are only trying to get the "spirit" of the topic. Once you have done this, you will then want to go back and reread the topic through carefully and thoroughly insuring that you understand all that you read. You should go slowly being sure that you understand all that you read. This is all that you will do in the first reading. If there is anything that you didn't understand the first time in sitting, don't worry about it, for it will come to you later. You are going to read the same topic on two separate days. This is the minimum that anyone should read a topic through.

The second time in reading, you will want to go just as slow as you did in the first reading. If there is anything you still don't understand then just lightly think upon it and don't worry. The answer will eventually come to you. After the second reading, if there is anything to practice or do, this is the time to do it. Sounds easy doesn't it?

I have just described the minimum anyone should take per topic. You should not go on to the next topic until you are very familiar with the information in the present topic you are studying. You should understand the current topic thoroughly and have practiced what is required of you until you are ready to go on. Let your inner guide be your judge about when you are ready to go on. You will find that you have to continue to practice many of the first topics you study each day in order to eventually master them. Getting all the way through the book having only read and practiced everything haphazardly will only insure that you are master of none. To insure your success as a Night Magician in Night Magick, you must study as has been outlined here.

You must have a room in which you can be alone and uninterrupted. You must cleanse yourselves of the outer world. You must study slowly, carefully, and thoroughly each topic. You will have to continue to go back and study and practice daily the knowledge and exercises until you become master of all. There is no doubt about it and should be none in your mind that Night Magick requires study and work. The results are more than worth all the time and energy that you can give to it. To become a Master in Night Magick; to become a Night Magician; to reach and obtain Night Consciousness; this is your goal. Let me show you now the life of a Night Magician and all that it entails in becoming and being a Night Magician.

## CHAPTER II

### THE NIGHT MAGICIAN

#### 5. Her/His Life

The life of a Night Magician is a very special one. You will find that a Night Magician's life is filled with the most powerful magick. Your world will not be the same after Night Magick has filled it. Your life will have seemed very ordinary and plain before Night Magick. Your life will now be filled with adventure.

When you have elected to live the life of a Night Magician you have chosen to accept a way of life that is different than you have so far experienced. It is a life filled with study and practice of Night Magick and the excitement and adventure that is a direct result. Night Magick will fulfill for you your lifelong aspirations. It will be my job to present the life of a Night Magician to you. I hope when I'm through that you will find it exciting and want to begin the adventure of becoming a Night Magician. Let's enter then into the life of a Night Magician.

The Night Magician's life is filled with study and practice of the Night Magick lore. As you study and practice, the Oversoul will examine and test your accomplishments. No matter who you are, you came here to gain experience and grow from it. But upon accepting the Night Magician's way of life the trials will increase in both number and intensity. It is not that the lore found in this book is difficult, but that in accepting this life the Night Magician is tested by life so that s/he may put into practice Night Magick. The Night Magician's life is going to be filled with many trials.

This is not out of cruelty but out of necessity. The trials are set upon the Magician to build magickal strength and depth in the use of Night Magick. Every test in the Magician's life is to build magickal stature and to increase it once passed. No matter whether the test is overcoming a difficult financial situation, or the working through of a difficult marriage, or the death of a loved one, the tests are there to help the Night Magician grow. If the Night Magician falls then there is nothing else for her/him to do but get up, dust off the knees, and keep going knowing that the next time when faced with a similar situation success will come. When you accept the life of a Night Magician there will be trials and hardships. But if you are willing to accept the difficulties and meet the challenge then you will not be overcome by them.

You will find solutions to these trials through your knowledge of Night Magick. Through Night Magick, you will raise your magickal vibration and grow closer to the Oneness of your Oversoul. It is through this Oneness, and the power that flows from it and through you, that you will be able to handle these increased tests. You are learning to become the Oversoul in all that you say and do. No matter what the test, you must meet it in the Night Consciousness of your Oversoul. Through this continual testing, and the placing of yourself in the Conscience of your Oversoul, you will become One with IT. Thus you will have passed the final test on Earth and have achieved the One Goal. You will have achieved Night Consciousness. The Night Magician's life is thus marked by training and testing. But her/his life is not all training and testing. For out of this training and testing will come adventure.

The Night Magician will travel new avenues of adventure that were never there before. The tests the Night Magician receives will take her/him to unusual places and there will be experiences that can only be described as exciting and wonderful. The Night Magician will experience new levels of physical well-being and sexual vitality. S/he will experience new job challenges and opportunities as part of using Night Magick. There will be emotional and mental experiences that break through the limited ways of feelings and thinking of old. The Night Magician will experience increases of personal wealth. The Night Magician's life will become aflame with purpose.

That purpose may not always be easy to identify at first, but the Magician will feel it none the less, deep within. Ultimately, through the Night Magician's way of life, s/he will come to know that purpose and become it. The Night Magician is in command of her/his life. S/he sets the trail where others will follow. The Night Magician must grab hold onto life and in everything that s/he says and does must express the Night Soul. The Night Magician's life is filled with purpose and it is through that purpose that s/he will unfold her/his Night Powers. The Night Magician's purpose is her/his dream. It is what s/he must do while s/he is upon the Earth plane. But that purpose and dream will set her/him apart from those adrift on the sea. The Night Magician must overcome loneliness as a result of it. S/he must overcome the misunderstanding of others and press on. There will be many unbelievers in this world for there are many lost in the Yang matrix, but s/he must ignore them and all else that interferes with the dream. But if the Night Magician is truly dedicated and willing to sacrifice for the dream, if s/he believes in her/himself and the Night Soul within and expresses only that Soul, then the Night Magician's dream will manifest itself into the world. That dream is the Will of the Oversoul and it will appear into the world. The Night Magician's life is marked by purpose, dedication, sacrifice, determination, and darkest love. The Night Magician's life is darkest magic of the highest kind. It is magick that produces deepest joy and happiness in the Night Magician's life. It is the magick of the Oversoul on Earth. The Night Magician's life is aimed at becoming the Oversoul in all that is done. Imagine a life that is filled with nothing but the Nightsoul.

In you, as a Night Magician, the Power and Absolute Love of the Oversoul comes to its fullest. When that Power and Absolute Love flows through you and into the lives of those around you and on out into the world itself nothing can remain as it was before. Everything that the Night Power touches shall be made anew. It shall shine with an Amethyst/Emerald Light Divine. This is the Night Magick of the Oversoul. This is Magick of the Highest Order and it is in the Night Magician's life. Here you have some of the beautiful facets of the life of a Night Magician. Her/his life is marked by trials and testing. This is not meant to discourage you but to show the true picture to all would-be Night Magicians. If you are to become a Night Magician then you must truly understand all that is involved and be willing to give all that it takes. It will take determination, courage, fortitude, and intuition in all the seemingly hardships. It will take this to be able to grasp from the lore the knowledge required and to put it into practice; to become a Night Magician.

The Night Magician's life is study, training, practice, and being tested. But the Night Magician's life is much more. It is life filled with happiness and joy. It is filled with inner peace and absolute love. It is filled with adventure and excitement. It is a life filled with success. The Night Magician is truly in command of her/his life. S/he is the Oversoul in action. This way of life is all that the Night Magician ever cares to know. Her/his goals for this life are all that matters. These goals are the Night Magician's life and Night Magick will ensure the success of achieving these goals. The life of a Night Magician is a very special one. I would like you to travel with me now on the roadway the apprentice must follow to become a Night Magician.

#### 6. The Apprentice's Unfoldment.

What I want to do now is draw for you a road map that will take you down the road of Night Magick. The road ahead of you is easy to get lost on just look at others around you. If you are

going to effectively follow the Night Magick road you must have signs and landmarks to guide you and tell you how far you have come. In the next topic, I will discuss your final destination, Night Consciousness. So let's begin our journey on the Night Road.

From the beginning of the first descent into material creation, from the first sojourn on Earth, it will take many sojourns before one is ready to enter the Night Road. There are many people who are not ready for it. Their minds are so preoccupied with doing things the Yang way, they are so lost in doing things the hard way, that they have no time for their own magickal growth. They are so lost in the illusion of the material world and its limitations that they can not see beyond it. You can see why it will take so many people hundreds of lives before they can see beyond the illusion of this world and learn to use Night Magick in overcoming its so-called limitations. I should state from the onset of this work that there are very few paths or roads which lead to truly achieving your goals and overcoming the world of illusion. There are many paths dedicated to the Yang Spirit which is a road of limitation, hardship, self-denial, and poverty. It is a path that runs counter to the Soul and Spirit within you. I have tried to present here a road to Night Consciousness which is simple in nature and language. It is a road that requires persistence, study, courage, boldness, and self-discipline to travel but the goals you will achieve on the way and your final attainment of the ultimate goal makes it all worth while. There is no way of telling how long it will take to reach the ultimate goal.

You may be able to reach it in this lifetime or it may take many lifetimes. Much will depend upon your aptitude for Night Magick and your dedication and effort. It isn't necessary to reach the ultimate goal in one life. There will be many goals and great changes in your life to make traveling the road more than worthwhile. Once you have entered the Night Road, then life after life you will return to this world taking up where you last left off. This is because a simple decision to enter the Night Road does not mean that you will be accepted and are on your way. The Night Soul looks for those who are ready to travel the road. You must want to be on the road that leads to your Night Soul more than anything else in your life. There must be nothing more important in your life than being on the road and the desire to achieve your goals and the ultimate goal. This decision must be more than a mental thought. This decision must be backed by action on your part. Not only do you feel this intense desire to be on the Night Road but you are willing to begin the work necessary to achieve it. In Night Magick, you will have begun this work by beginning to read and put into practice the lore found in this book. There is no way of determining how long it will take to be accepted on the Night Road. But rest assured, if you are truly sincere about entering the road and are willing to do the work then you will be accepted. You are the beginner, the apprentice, on the roadway to the Night Soul. Acceptance on the Night Road is no small thing. Acceptance on the road is your first landmark and is clearly marked.

In Night Magick, you are an "Earth Apprentice". You have reached the first landmark and gained entrance upon the Night Road. At this point your Oversoul will begin to take an active interest in you. Upon your acceptance, the Oversoul actively enters into your life. You will begin to feel the beginnings of Night Power. You will have the beginning of increased Oversoul Power flowing into your life. But how will you know when you have been accepted?

As said before, this acceptance is clearly marked. You will undergo an experience that will definitely let you know you have become an Earth Apprentice. For example, you may in the quiet of your Magician's Study, or as you are falling asleep some night, suddenly see the image of the Oversoul in deep hues of Emerald, Amethyst, Midnight Blue and/or Silver before you. As you continue to watch the image of your Oversoul it will start to come towards you. As the Oversoul comes closer, you suddenly know that you are the Oversoul and its Face is your face, and the Oversoul enters inside you, and you feel a deep, warm glow and power radiating from within. You know that the birth of the Oversoul has taken place within and that you are an Earth Apprentice. As an Earth Apprentice you have become the Night Child.

I refer to the Earth Apprentice as a Night Child for at the time of acceptance you have been given birth into the Night World. You are now a Magickal Child of the Night Spirit. Your Oversoul will gain new radiance and added power by actively entering into cooperation with you. That new radiance will be seen by the Watchers and reported to the Night Guild. Your acceptance upon the Night Road heralds your entrance into the Night Guild.

This Guild is composed of all beings who serve the Dark Light of the Night Spirit. The members of the Guild exist both in Higher Dimensions and upon all material planets. The highest members of the Guild serve as Teachers and Directors of the Omniverse everywhere. One group of members serve as Teachers and Directors over the Earth. In Night Magick, I will refer to them as the Night Teachers. I have done this because they have risen far in magickal evolution and are One with the Night Soul. As a new Earth Apprentice, you are watched over by a Night Teacher who chooses to do so based on compatible nature and vibration. The

assistance of the Night Teacher is one of watchfulness and occasional guidance as you, the Earth Apprentice, begins to journey on the Night Road. But as you continue to demonstrate your willingness and dedication to the road you've chosen, and to the Will of your Oversoul, the relation between you and the Night Teacher deepens. When the Night Teacher is ready and has determined you are ready, then you will be accepted by the Night Teacher as Her/His Chela. The relationship between the Night Teacher and Her/His chela is a very special one. The Night Teacher gives Her/His continual guidance, support, and power to the new chela. The Night Teacher shares Her/His very nature with Her/His new chela. The chela may call upon the assistance of the Night Teacher at anytime and it will be answered. Yet the chela must remember that s/he is the beginner and that the Will of the Night Teacher should always be followed. The Night Teacher and the Oversoul of the chela work very closely together to achieve what must be done by the Oversoul. The Night Teacher and chela are as Mother/Father and Daughter/Son. They share and create in the Night Power and Guild. How will you know though who your Night Teacher is?

There are many ways in which this may come about. You may meet Her/Him in your dreams, or more rarely, S/he may come to you in your waking hours. For many of you, you will just know through your sixth sense. You will come to know intuitively who your Night Teacher is. I will go into greater depth about the Night Teachers in the later part of this book. Do not be worried or concerned about who the Night Teacher is in your life. S/he will choose you and guide you and you should feel secure in this matter. S/he will reveal Her/Himself to you in Her/His own time. At this point you are now progressing upon the Night Road.

Your first subject area to master in Night Magick will be Earth Magick. Not only will you learn a great deal about the Earth and its Magickal Energies and Power but you will also be altering physically and magickally. When you have achieved sufficient growth and mastery in this area of Earth Magick you will be ready for the second landmark. If you looked at the last landmark as the birth of the Oversoul in the your world, as your becoming the Magickal Child, then this is "you the Oversoul" as a teenager. Here you have been transformed from the Earth Apprentice to the Water Apprentice.

You will begin your study of Water Magick. This is the area of Night Magick related to the emotions and astral world.

As a Water Apprentice, you will experience an ever greater increase of the Power of the Night Soul. You will undergo increased emotional development. You will be given experiences that will strengthen that emotional development. As a Water Apprentice, you will gain the ability to know Truth in all its forms and use that in your everyday world. You will also begin to learn control over your emotions. The Night Magician needs emotional control in order to wield Night Magick effectively. The power you will be able to wield without emotional control could do incredible damage which you may later regret. The Night Magician must be master of her/his emotions not the other way around. One point I should cover is that concerning the aura.

Until I go into more detail about it later, accept for now, that there is an energy that completely surrounds your body and extends beyond it about one to three feet. This energy field is called an aura. The aura reflects emotions and thoughts in people. The aura is made up of swirling energy currents and through magickal sight the aura can be seen as colors. All of this you will cover in greater depth in later topics. In the average person, the colors that comprise the aura are various and many. In the Earth Apprentice, the color that is predominate in the aura is green. In the Water Apprentice, the aura will be of a light blue. This is another indicator of when you have been accepted on the road. The aura, as an indicator, will help you further in identification of the next landmark. You have seen the things that you must accomplish, or be in the process of accomplishing, in order to achieve the next landmark. You have studied Water Magick and developed and strengthened your emotional stature. When you have traveled far enough on the Night Road another landmark appears before you. You are about to undergo another transformation and become the Air Apprentice.

Here you have entered the "Oversoul as a very young adult" stage. The emphasis as an Air Apprentice is upon mastering Air Magick or Magick of the Mind. You will be studying Air Magick and undergo mental training. You will be developing what in Air Magick is known as the Mental Body. Your studies in Night Magick will help develop the Mental Body. During this phase of life you may also attend some advance education or training in the world. The mind is a powerful instrument and its training is critical in Night Magick. You will be merging your mind with the Higher Mind of the Oversoul. This will lead you to the last part of your journey to becoming a Night Magician. The last landmark is ahead and you find yourself traveling through Fire.

Here you are the young adult Oversoul. You are the Fire Apprentice. Your studies are of Fire

**Magick. Fire Magick is the Realm of the Oversoul. It is the studies of the Higher Mind and Causal Body. You now are learning and using the Night Powers of the Oversoul. The power that flows through your life will be like nothing you have so far experienced. This is the time when you will be reaching adulthood in the Oversoul. You will be achieving oneness with the Oversoul and there will no longer be a you and the Oversoul. You are about to become a true channel through which the Night Power will flow without impediment. To experience the Night Realm of Fire is to know life without time or space. It is being everywhere and every time. It is knowing and seeing all that has ever been, is, and will be: and as the Silent Watcher and Observer seeing it all unfold. It is like standing amongst the sea of stars and knowing that this is all that you are. It is feeling and being a part of unlimited darkness and absolute love. This is perhaps the longest part of the journey. There is much to study, experience, and develop into. But finally like all journeys, this one comes to an end. And at the end of the Night Road, you are no longer an Apprentice but a Night Magician.**

**You and the Oversoul are One. You are the mature, adult Oversoul on Earth. Words only tend to limit the experience of this achievement. The Night Power that you now feel is so great that you have trouble controlling it as it surges through your material being. This experience can never be adequately described by words but must be lived to be known. This is the point which hails the complete union of the Higher and lower selves. The Oversoul and you are now One to the greatest possible extent. The Causal body is now shared as One by the Oversoul and you. A person with magickal sight of sufficient advancement will see a fully developed Causal Body with the full and active Presence of the Oversoul within it. The aura will glow with an intense deep amethyst/silver glow. You and the Oversoul share Its Powers and capabilities jointly. You are One and Inseparable in Consciousness and Action with the Oversoul. You have experienced everything that you must in life. You are now free of Karma. This is the last material vehicle you will have to express through on Earth. You are the master of the lower worlds. You know the cycles of birth and rebirth and know the happiness at having completed the need to ever undergo the cycle again. You are free from life that ends in death. You have become all knowledge, power, wisdom, and control of the Oversoul. Is your journey really over?**

**No, not really. There will always be a perfecting process going on. There will always be new heights to climb and greater understanding to be achieved. What is included in this book as Night Magick is really only the "tip of the iceberg". But you will always enjoy your continued travels and adventures on the Night Road. There will always be new things to discover. There will always be new adventures and excitement on the Night Road. I have done my best to guide you this far on the Night Road.**

**I want you to understand that this map is not set in concrete. The general course has been laid out for you but the time you take to travel on the road and the tests and experiences you will undergo are known only to the Oversoul. Sometimes you may detour slightly into another area of magick and that's ok as long as it is the Will of the Oversoul. I would like now to help you understand the Consciousness of the Oversoul. I call it Night Consciousness and it is what you will ultimately achieve.**

## **7. Night Consciousness**

**There are countless numbers of Souls in creation. The Soul, that is your Oversoul, is unique throughout the Omniverse. The consciousness of the Oversoul is separated from the consciousness of the human being. It is possible for the two consciousness to join. This union of consciousness I refer to as Night Consciousness. I am going to explore with you the inner depths of Night Consciousness. You will discover things that you will have to do in order to attain it. You will learn to live and practice it and the changes that will take place within you as you start to acquire it. First though, we are going to examine, in greater detail, exactly what Night Consciousness is.**

**Night Consciousness, in humankind, is a state of causal, mental, emotional, and physical being. It is becoming the Oversoul in each of these states of being. It is reaching the greatest possible state of perfection while here on Earth. The Causal body is to the Oversoul what the physical/etheric body is to humankind. Its lowest vibrational body.**

**The Causal Body is the storehouse for the experiences of countless lifetimes in incarnation. The Oversoul experiences life from its dimension through the Causal Body just as we experience physical life through the physical body. When you have achieved Night Consciousness you will be able to consciously use the Causal Body. You will be able to directly tap into awareness of the Oversoul. This will directly effect your mental being.**

**Mentally, you must achieve all that the Oversoul is. It is your mental development and attitude which will carry you into this Magickal Consciousness. When you have mentally set your sights upon your goal and give it all that you possible have, then you will bring it into**

manifestation within you. Night Consciousness is mentally being aware of all knowledge and wisdom of the Oversoul. You will know, whatever it is that you must know by simply tapping into it. You will have supreme wisdom for all situations knowing just what and how to do it. You may have never studied the subject before but the knowledge will be there when you need it. You will have tremendous willpower and concentration. This is Night Consciousness in humankind. Night Consciousness is more than just a mental state. It is also your emotional state of being.

It fills your world of feeling and changes it to perfection. It is having perfect understanding of all situations. It is the giving of perfect, absolute love. This is love beyond the human state that enters you into the absolute state of being. More on this in a later topic. The emotional state in Night Consciousness is one of silence and profound solitude. It is a high state of reflection and receptivity. It is also a state of aggression, boldness, and daring. Night Consciousness is an emotional state of passion, courage and love of pleasure and ease. This Consciousness even descends into the physical state of being. Your bodies become pure, Night Energy through Night Consciousness. The body becomes the perfect channel through which the Oversoul may flow out into the world. Night Consciousness is perfect control and mastery of the physical being. This is Night Consciousness in the four aspects of humankind. Night Consciousness is many things to humankind.

It is a state of bliss and peace that humankind has yet to know. It is a state of perfect knowledge, wisdom, absolute love, understanding, innocence, happiness, joy, and freedom. It is a state of awareness that words can not do justice to. Words only tend to diminish the real understanding of the nature of Night Consciousness. Yet I have made the attempt to do so in hopes that you would have a better understanding of what it is. Night Consciousness is the goal of life on Earth. It is a goal worth giving your all in dedication, devotion, and determination to in reaching it. Therefore, let's see exactly what you will have to do in reaching the Bliss of Night Consciousness.

The things necessary to do, to reach Night Consciousness, may at first seem to overwhelm you. There is a great deal to accomplish if you want to reach it. But you should not be scared by the number of things you must accomplish, nor by the feeling that some of them seem impossible for you to do. Nothing that is described here will be impossible for you to do if you will be determined and persistent in your efforts. To begin you must master the physical body. Its alright to indulge the physical body with food, pampering and passion. At the same time, you must also balance this with physical training to maintain physical well-being. The body is essential to every Night Magician for it is the channel through which Night Magick flows and alters the world. Take care of it. Much of the knowledge you will gain will slowly alter the human body changing its frequency into harmony with the Night Force. As the body changes you will be able to increase the flow of the Night Force through you. Do everything in balance. You must become masters of your emotional life.

From the onset of studying Night Magick you will experience emotions. It is alright to experience and even use the emotions in Night Magick. But at all times, you must be in control of them. You must not be ruled by jealousy, lust, pride, or selfishness. You must control anger and hatred. These things will still try to enter into your feelings but you will gain instant control over them. You must remain in control under all conditions. No matter how disturbing the current challenges in your life you must remain centered. You must also maintain a balanced mind.

Your mind must always be centered in the silence of the Night. There is great power in the silence of the Mind. Your mind should be fixed in self-discipline and strong-willed. Your mind must be fixed in intellectual pursuit and critical thinking. You must maintain original and independent thinking at all times. You will be inventive and versatile in your thinking. Your mind set must be one of persistence, patience and persevering. Your mind will at times be required to act in a reserved and cautious manner and at other times courageous, bold, and gallant. Flexibility to meet the ever changing challenges is the key of Night Consciousness. You must be temperate, wise, and poised in all things. These are just a few of the things necessary for you to reach Night Consciousness.

They are not easy to master. Yet they must be mastered and put actively into your life. You must live and practice Night Consciousness from the very beginning. This topic is placed early in the book because it is the first thing which you will have to learn and begin practicing in Night Magick. If you are to have any success at all in Night Magick, you will have to practice and master this topic. In all other subjects you will study and master in this book, Night Consciousness is of the most importance. It will bring you success in all other things you attempt in Night Magick. How then do you practice and live Night Consciousness?

To begin, you must live the life of the Oversoul. You must be consciously aware of the Night

Power that flows through you from your Oversoul. Everywhere you go, you must constantly remain in the Consciousness of the Oversoul. You must know that you are the Oversoul and radiate Night Power. You must speak and act as the Oversoul. You must gain a very special attitude towards life. You must learn to be in the world but not of it. You must not become lost in the illusions of limitations. With the aid of Night Magick you will want for nothing but at the same time you must never allow material possessions to possess you. Your magickal life must be balanced by your practical life. You must give each part of your life equal time. Your practical life should be filled with your magickal nature. You must learn to take each day, one at a time. It is wrong to worry about tomorrow for in Night Consciousness your destiny of success is assured. You must learn to obey your Oversoul as you would yourself for in reality you and the Oversoul are One. All of your needs will be taken care of through Night Consciousness. That doesn't mean you can just sit back and do nothing. You must give your full effort to life but without worry or concern about your future. If you are following the Night Road to Night Consciousness, then the outcome is clear. There is also one other thing that you can do to enhance your attaining Night Consciousness until you become more adept in Night Magick.

In your pursuit of Night Consciousness you will be greatly benefitted if you will get out into the outdoors as much as possible. The beauty, peace, and power of nature will do much in restoring and helping to maintain your Oversoul Nature. The Earth is a storehouse of Night Energy and by your visits to those places where the Earth has been relatively untouched you will be able to absorb the Night Energy. If you begin to practice what I just covered and continue to study and practice Night Magick then you will eventually reach Night Consciousness. But only your Oversoul knows all the things necessary for you to do to reach Night Consciousness and the time required to do so. So you must be untiring in your efforts to reach it and know that it will come. You must come to know that there is no separation in Consciousness between you and your Oversoul. There are signs which will indicate to you that you are starting to approach Night Consciousness.

There are changes that will take place within you all along the road to your final destination. These changes will help reassure you that you are making progress. One of the first significant changes in your life will be a new powerful inner vibration.

You will become charged with a new zest for life. The Oversoul Power will flow through you and raise every cell in your body in a glorious fire. You will find you will need less sleep and yet your energy will remain very high. You will find that your health will be greatly improved and that your breathing will come much easier. Your body will become the Body of your Oversoul. You will find yourselves growing more in the ways of the Silver Rule. You may do anything that you want if you always maintain the Eternal Night Balance. You will begin to hear an Inner Voice who will be your instructor and guardian. This Inner Voice will be that of your Oversoul and/or Night Teacher who will guide you and care for you. This will cause you to develop flashes of intuition. These brief moments of insight should be carefully listened to and followed. If you do, then the help will continue to come to you. You will find that your knowledge seems to increase within you. You will gain an understanding of things that you never seemed to understand before. You will instinctively seem to know what to do about a particular problem. For example, if your car breaks down you will know almost immediately what is wrong with it and if possible, how to repair it. You will also come to know Truth from untruth. It doesn't matter whether that source originates from a person, reading material, or whatever, you will know whether what is said is True or not. Nothing will be able to hide from your inner knowing and vision. This is also about the time when your lower psychic abilities and faculties start to open up. You will learn a great deal about them later in the book. They will give you abilities and powers beyond that of other people. Therefore you must be careful in using them such that the Eternal Night Balance is always maintained. Do not worry about these centers for now in a later topic you will be given what you need to maintain control. You will feel a greater need for solitude and a time away from people. There are more indications of approaching Night Consciousness and you will learn more about them as you continue your studies of Night Magick. Remember, Night Consciousness is a physical, emotional, mental, and causal development.

You know some of the things to concentrate on to help develop this consciousness. As I just said you will learn more of the essentials to help develop this consciousness as you learn Night Magick. You have also learned some of the indicators of your developing Night Consciousness and when you finally reach it you will know it. What is required is effort, dedication, persistence, self-discipline and study. With all this, you will achieve Night Consciousness. Combined with Night Magick there won't be a thing you can't achieve. Your imagination and dreams are the only limits in Night Magick. From this point in your study of Night Magick, I

would like to go over the principles upon which a Night Magician's life is based.

## CHAPTER III

### BEGINNING NIGHT MAGICK

#### 8. Standards and Principles of Practicing Night Magick

You are about to embark on the Night Road of learning Night Magick and achieving Night Consciousness. There are certain standards and practices which you must include in your life while on the Road. I have covered a few of them already but I will go into greater depth over some of them and cover some additional standards and principles to insure your success.

The Silver Rule (silver being a precious metal to the Night Force) is "you may do anything that you want if you always maintain the Eternal Night Balance". The Eternal Night Balance is a fundamental law of the Night Force. Balance in the Omniverse is a vital factor to order within the Eternal Night. For everything you take from the Eternal Night you must give back to the Eternal Night in equal measure. This does not mean of course that if through Night Magick, using the energy of the Night Force, you acquire wealth that you must give money back to the Night Force. It means that the amount of energy used to accomplish something must be returned in full. This keeping of the Eternal Night Balance is an intuitive matter that is easy to maintain when working within Night Consciousness. Therefore, before using Night Magick to accomplish any event, always work within the consciousness of the Oversoul to be able to maintain the Balance. There also follows another major principle within which you must practice Night Magick. This is the "Law of Night Magick".

The Law of Night Magick is "there is nothing impossible when you are One with the Night Force". I mean absolutely nothing. Always remember this fundamental law and believe it with all your might. Remember that everything you do in life is Night Magick. It should be done in Night Consciousness. Your whole life is now an expression of Night Magick and Consciousness. There is nothing you cannot do. I'd like to turn for the moment to the principles governing the Night Magician and the world as a whole.

You will find the world to be rather hostile to you concerning Night Magick. The religions of the world are predominantly Yang. The majority of people have been conditioned to respond in a Yang manner. Yang and Yin are opposite forces which do not mix well. From Night Consciousness's view, each soul is responsible for its own world. Each soul determines much of its life and the quality of that life before coming here. There is some predestination in all lives yet there is much which is not. If individuals are poor and/or homeless then this gives the Oversoul that experience. If souls are wealthy then that is another experience. This world offers a myriad of different experiences for the Oversoul to live and experience. The Oversoul lives many lives on Earth in order to get a well-rounded education. The Earth can be a very rough school and souls here are experiencing in essence the first grade of life. When the Oversoul has experienced all the lessons it deems necessary then it moves on to a new world with more advanced lessons to be learned. This system is called reincarnation and is very difficult for much of the world to except.

They would rather explain much of the world's problems and their own as the fault of someone else. The Christians blame Satan for the ills of the world. There are many people who blame their government. Others blame other people and their not caring about their fellow human. The Night Magician blames no one.

The Night Magician knows that her/his beginnings on this planet are chosen from the other side of life. S/he chooses her/his parents, race, sex, country, and many of the future events before arriving to insure that the necessary lessons for this life are achieved. It may sound terrible but a woman may actually chose to be raped in order to gain that experience and learn from it. There are children born bad. They are souls who previously raped, murdered, robbed, etc. and are returning little changed from their previous lives. Human souls are not born innocent regardless of how innocent that baby looks in her/his cradle. They have lived before on Earth and are returning little changed from when they last lived on Earth. They are a bundle of possibilities and potentials and already have the beginnings of personality for this life. You arrive the same way but as a Night Magician you must take charge of your life. If you don't like it then change it. Use Night Magick to alter your world. Some parts of life are predestined but many are not. The free times feel like your adrift on a sea without much direction. This is the time to chose a new direction. You shouldn't get involved in changing all the world's ills.

I believe someone said before that there will always be the poor and hungry. This is true because this world requires those experiences for a certain group of souls. There will always be crime because there will always be others who want what someone else has. There are experiences of hardship, suffering, crime, poverty, hunger, divorce, physical and sexual abuse,

and a thousand more like it. There are experiences of wealth, fame, comfort, peace, happy marriage, beautiful children, successful career, and a thousand more like it, too. The Oversoul needs all these experience possibilities. The Night Magician chooses her/his experiences and controls them through Night Magick. The Night Magician knows that the rest of the world chooses their experiences too and lives them the best they can so that the Oversoul may gain experience. Help the other soul when led by your Oversoul to do so. But have no guilt, nor interfere in another soul's existence, when in Night Consciousness you know that what they are experiencing is necessary. The practice of Night Magick requires that the affairs of your world move with a steady, even pace.

There is no set limit as to how fast this pace may be. Setting limits upon pace is a relative matter. But the pace must be even and steady. Do not become so embroiled in the everyday routines of the hustling, bustling world that your world is conducted without Night Magick. You must have a magickal attitude while in the world. You must keep your consciousness raised above the mire and limitations of the world. You must approach life with passion and zest.

In Night Consciousness, life is an adventure. Life is usually made up of one adventure after another. Everything that has happened to you is a type of adventure that requires your use of Night Magick to see it through. There are adventures which you may feel have had an unhappy ending. Perhaps that ending did not have to occur with the use of Night Magick. If you are in the Night Flow and something bad seems to have happened perhaps there was a reason. Use Night Magick to find out. Use Night Magick to correct the situation. Do all this in Night Consciousness. There will be times when you must approach life with courage, boldness, and energy. There will be other times when you must use caution, prudence, and reflection. Approach life from Night Consciousness and you will always know what to do. In Night Consciousness, life is art.

You are the Night Magician. You are the artist. Create! Create any kind of life you want. Your imagination is the limit. Fill your life with passion and love. Fill your life with honor, dignity, and pride in the works you create. As the artist be inventive and imaginative in what you create as your life. If you want wealth that is fine. If you want pleasure and ease that is fine. Remember, Night Balance in what you create. The Night Magician operates from a point of solitude.

The Night Magician is a solitary worker. This doesn't mean you won't have friends. You may be a very active person socially with many friends. You can even practice Night Magick collectively in groups. But ultimately, the Night Magician is a solitary worker. The Night Magician must achieve mastery in Night Magick and Night Consciousness on her/his own. No one else can do this for you. I can show you how to practice Night Magick and give you the keys to obtaining Night Consciousness but I can't bestow upon you, mastery in Night Magick or Night Consciousness. This you must do on your own with study, self-discipline, effort and energy.

Night Magick is for those willing to pursue knowledge. It takes knowledge not faith to become a Night Magician. It takes a lover of independent thinking. One who is free of convention and is not a sheep in the world. It takes mental precision and intelligence to master Night Magick. It will require will power and perseverance to overcome obstacles when they show up. You must learn control of thoughts. You will hear this over and over, "thoughts are things". I don't know who first said this but remember it. If you think thoughts of poverty then guess what, you are poor. If you wish some one dead, even idly, then they may die. Through Night Magick, thoughts become things with purpose. Learn control of your thoughts from the onset.

Emotions are also part of this.

Emotions add energy to thoughts. So you must also learn to control emotions. Emotions, like thoughts, are energy and energy changes the world around you. I am not limiting any thoughts or emotions from your world. You are free to think and feel anything you want. But remember, thoughts and emotions will change the world around you and you are responsible for those changes. Keep the Eternal Night Balance. Remember the Silver Rule and you will have no problems. You need to take care of your physical body.

Night Magicians come in all shapes and sizes. There are no requirements in this area. What is important is the physical body is the ultimate channel through which the Night Force flows out into the world. You need to keep that channel as in tuned with the Night Force as possible. You will learn techniques to do this shortly. Try to maintain oneness with your Oversoul and the Night Force by keeping them in your thoughts and emotions at all time. This will help maintain the balance. It is alright to smoke, eat, and provide the body with physical pleasure. But balance is again important to your practicing Night Magick. You can't practice Night Magick if you die of overeating, heart attack, or cancer. You will learn to control your

thoughts and emotions to help prevent these things. But if you go too far one way then all your knowledge won't help if the body can't act as a channel for the Night Force. Balance pleasure with physical exercise, breathing exercises with smoking, and right thoughts and emotions that will control the stress and pressures in your life. I want to talk to you about drugs. Their use is a very popular thing. In the right hands drugs can be very beneficial to human health. Magickally, drugs have been used to induce certain mental and emotional states. In the case of Night Magick, DON'T USE THEM! Drugs have more than a physical effect. They alter the etheric, astral, and mental bodies. Drugs can do severe damage to these bodies that may take many "lifetimes" to repair. I assure you that there is nothing drugs can do for you that Night Magick can't do for you. There is no high or altered state that Night Magick can't achieve for you.

Drugs can so alter your many bodies that by using Night Magick you will place yourself in danger of losing your physical life. Moreover, you may lose your emotional and mental stability that will require hospitalization. So far, I have not limited you in thought or action in this book. But in this case, be warned. Do not use drugs. If you are using prescription drugs under a physician's care and they severely alter your state of being then for that time don't practice Night Magick. Wait till you no longer need the drugs. Under drugs I am also including alcohol. On occasion you may feel like getting drunk. As you progress in Night Consciousness you will eventually be able to drink and not get drunk. For most, that is a long time from now. Drinking, to a lesser degree, alters the physical, etheric, astral, and mental bodies. The effects are usually not as damaging unless you overdose on alcohol. Drinking in moderation is fine. There is nothing wrong with an occasional drink. For some though, an occasional drink becomes overuse of alcohol which ultimately will have the same effect as non-alcohol drugs. Again, do not practice Night Magick while under the influence of alcohol regardless of the amount of alcohol. It has the same possible effect as non-alcohol drugs. Let's go on to sex. In today's world one usually talks about sex after talking about drugs. Sex is great. With Night Magick, sex is going to become fantastic. The energy that is going to flow through you during orgasm will give you the ultimate orgasms of your life. There are though some rules that apply to this area.

It should be obvious that you must practice "safe sex". The male should use a condom and the woman should be sure he uses it. No matter how close you are to your spouse or circle of friends unless you're sure of their monogamy, men use condoms. Women should also use contraceptives to prevent pregnancy. Men should learn how to put on condoms to insure they don't break and never use petroleum products that will cause the latex to break. Women should also know how to put a condom on a man to insure the man does it right. You may find that as you increase in Night Consciousness and the flow of the Night Force increases that the only time you will achieve those ultimate orgasms is when the partner is also practicing Night Magick.

In Night Magick, concerning sex, it doesn't matter whether the couple is heterosexual, male-male, female-female. It doesn't matter if the couple act alone. It doesn't matter if there is a man and more than one woman or a woman and more than one man to the couple. It doesn't matter if there is a group of couples of all polarities. It doesn't matter if the group is exclusively men or women. What really makes the difference is if everyone is practicing Night Magick. When all are practicing Night Magick then all are in the Night Flow. Everyone present will have some increase of energy flowing through them. All will feel the bond of Night Consciousness. In Night Magick there is no jealousy or possessiveness. In Night Magick there is no Judeo-Christian, or Moslem, or Mormon, or any oppressive religious hang-ups about sex. Each Night Magician is independent and free. Marriage under Night Magick is not one of possession but of mutual cooperation and love.

Group marriage is a very real possibility under Night Magick because a Night Magician honors independence, freedom, and equality in action among Night Magicians. There is no jealousy or possessiveness among Night Magicians. Women and Men have equal rights in Night Magick and Consciousness and in the world itself. But marriage between a Night Magician and non-practicing human being rarely works out.

Ultimately, the Night Magician changes so much that the spouse no longer understands the Night Magician. It is very rare to find a spouse who will understand the Night Magician and their way of life. The marriage often ends in divorce. But it is better to divorce and remain friends than to stay in a marriage which creates hostility and resentment. There is no balance in such a marriage. Many are made to feel guilty if there are children involved and stay married although there is hostility and resentment between them. I believe it is better for everyone involved if the couple divorce, and even if they can't remain friends, to at least remain cooperative and fair with each other concerning settlement and visitation. Balance

and harmony are important in a Night Magician's life. It is important to her/his success on the Night Road. Also important to this success and of a more concrete nature are Magickal Tools.

Down through the ages the Ancient Night Magicians have used many different types of tools and implements in the practice of the Ancient Art. You too are going to need Magickal Tools and in the next topic I will help you attain these tools.

#### 9. A Night Magician's Tools and Weapons

These are the Night Tools a Night Magician will need to set the proper atmosphere and conduct the basic rites. You will conduct these rites in the room you have designated as your Magician's Study within the Magick Circle which you will define its area with the Night Cord.

This cord should be made of silk, cotton, or wool. The cord needs to be long enough so that when it is laid down on the floor it will form a circle that contains the altar and yourself. If there are more people than yourself conducting Night Magick or even possibly just observing then you will need a long enough length to make a large enough circle to contain them. Within the Night Circle you will build the Night Altar.

The Night Altar is symbolic for your physical being in which is focused the Night Spirit. You will build an altar upon which you will focus your Powers of Eternal Darkness here on the Earth plane. It is best to keep it simple. The basic structure can be a small table, box, or anything which is sturdy. The altar should be about three feet wide by six feet long. The height of the Night Altar is your decision. You can have one which is at waist height when you are standing and one for when you are sitting. It is best to have both in your magickal inventory. Place the Night Altar so that when you are standing or sitting behind it you are facing North. Use a compass if necessary so that you can place it facing North. Then cover the Night Altar with a cloth of your choice. If at all possible choose a black, red, or silver colored cloth. It is best if the cloth has no distinctive pattern on the surface portion of the altar. This is your Night Altar. You then must place upon it some very special articles.

Upon the altar and towards the back left side place a red candle and on the right side place a black candle. On the left side and in front of the red candle place an incense holder and on the right place your copy of Night Magick. You may also place any other small trinkets that help build your feeling of Night Magick. Dragons, wizards, owls, and so on are fine. The Night Altar is a sacred symbol before which you come to release Night Power. It is the physical symbol of your body and heart and serves the same purpose: an anchor of the Night Force. You will need a good supply of incense to fill the incense holder on your Night Altar. Through trial and error you will find the right incense that fits your personal vibration. Each incense creates a vibration in the air and as you grow more magickal, you will be ever more sensitive to its vibration. Incense, which is of the stick variety and is thick in nature is good or you may have a small charcoal brazier and powdered incense. On the Night Altar you will also need the following things: a silver or crystal dish of sea salt; a vial of patchouli oil; a crystal bowl of water; a silver or crystal chalice; and a silver or crystal bell. Now all these articles sit on a Pentacle which is in the center of the Night Altar.

The Pentacle is a symbol of the Earth. It is a round plate made of wood and inscribed with sacred symbols of Night Magick. The plate is thirteen inches in diameter. For an example of such a plate and the layout of the articles see Figure 1. Then you will need a loose leaf notebook which will become your Night Magician's Grimoire.

From the very beginning of Night Magick you will have practices, exercises, and rites to perform and grow from. After each practice, exercise, or rite you should develop a grimoire which records the date, time, and experiences felt in that session. Record in as much detail as possible the successes and difficulties experienced. Keep a separate section for each type of practice, exercise, and rite. This will allow you to see your progress in each and to help you see where your difficulties are and how to possibly solve them. Be faithful and accurate in all entries made and this record will help speed your progress. These are your Night Tools. Next you will need your Night Weapons the first of which is a Night Amulet.

You need to make for yourself an amulet of black quartz crystal. This is a grounding and power stone of Night Force. If you want, the necklace the stone hangs from can also be made from quartz. I recommend though that the necklace be made of silver or amethyst. This will help balance the power of the black quartz stone. The Night Amulet will help keep your physical body in tune with the Night Force. You can tune into the Night Amulet and by holding it increase your vibration in the Night Force. You will also need to make a Night Ring.

This should be a ring made of silver. You can set the Night Ring with any combination of amethyst, black quartz, emerald, ruby, or diamond. A plain band of silver is fine. You may later want to add Night Runes and Night Magick Symbols to the Night Ring as you learn them. The Night Ring is a symbol of union with the Night Force. Next you need to make your Night

## Wand.

The wand should be about thirteen inches long. It should be made of wood or silver. You may encrust the wand with a combination of semi-precious and precious jewels. You may inscribe the Night Wand with Night Runes and Symbols. You will find these in Appendix C. You may place a crystal at either or both ends of the wand. The Night Wand is a focus of the Night Energy that leaves your body to be transmitted to an object or place. You now need to make a Night Staff.

The Night Staff is a symbol of Night Guidance, Power, and Authority. The Night Staff is to be made of wood. The kind of wood is left up to you but it should be one which you are in harmony with. The Night Staff should be approximately six feet high. You should leave the staff in its natural state or paint it black, red or silver if you feel its necessary. As said earlier, the Night Staff is a symbol of true Night Power and the Night Spirit's support to you. You will need a Night Athame.

This is a small dagger whose blade and handle is about twelve inches in length. This is used for ceremonial purposes only. Do not use this knife for cutting. You may want to place special symbols on the handle and/or blade to add magickal importance to your athame. Make for your Night Athame a scabbard which you can place on a belt on your person. You will also need a Night Sword.

You can use any style of sword. Japanese samurai, scimitar, cavalry sword, or Excalibur style sword. You should also have a scabbard which you keep the sword in and attach it to your side under your Night Cape. Of course, the next item you need is a Night Cape.

There is an easy way to make the Night Cape. Take enough cloth so that you have a square which is twice your height long on each side. Now go to the center of the cloth, and using a string that is half the length of one side of the cloth and on one end has a chalk stick attached, draw a circle on the cloth that has the radius of half the length of one side of the cloth. Also draw from the center a circle that has a radius of three inches. Now cut out the small circle and the large circle. Then place a slit from one edge of the small circle you just cut down the center of the cloth and through the edge. Sew ties into the material on the edge you just cut and near the top of the cape. You will also need to make a hood that will cover your entire head and will go over the head far enough to cover the face. You may attach the hood to the cape. See figure \_\_\_\_\_. The Night Cape serves a valuable purpose.

The Night Cape acts as an insulator to the outside forces that surround you. It will help block them out of your inner world and keep them from interfering in your magickal operations. Keep the cape secured in a cloth bag and put it where no one else may touch or bother it. Use it only in the practice of Night Magick. Next you will need to make the Night Plate.

Actually this is a breast plate. The basic shape and size of this plate is given in Figure \_\_\_\_\_. You may change the size and shape as fits you best. You may place upon the plate Night Symbols and Runes. You may also want to place stones of black quartz, amethyst, emerald, ruby, or diamond on it. The color of the plate should be black with runes and symbols in red and silver. Finally you will need to make a Night Shield.

The Night Shield is patterned after the shields used by knights of chivalry. Some basic shapes and sizes are given in Figure \_\_\_\_\_. Again the background should be black and symbols and runes should be in red and silver. The runes and symbols you place on the shield as with the Night Plate should help you increase your feeling of strength and courage in Night Magick.

These runes and symbols should help place you in Night Consciousness. The Night Magician's Tools and Weapons are very valuable to you.

They provide for you a means to advance in Night Magick. They provide the proper atmosphere in which to practice the lore of Night Magick. There are other devices that will be needed as you progress in your studies. As a rule, each will be relatively simple to acquire. They will be brought to your attention as you proceed. The Night Magician's Tools and Weapons given here are those which you will need before you proceed further in Night Magick. Once you have your tools and weapons made it is time to select your Night Name.

## 10. Your Magickal Night Name

The true name given to anything is very important. A true name contains the essence of that entity. It describes the differences and qualities of that entity. To know the true name of a thing is to imply acquisition and knowledge of that essence. To know the true name gives you dominion over it. The name that you as a Night Magician will choose is of great importance. You will select a Night Name which to you contains the very essence of your Inner Nature. This name may be the same as a famous personage you wish to emulate or a famous saying or motto. For example, you may choose a name such as Merlin, Saint Germain, Abra-Melin, Mithratar, or any other name that strikes your imagination and heart. You may choose a name from a saying or motto. A Night Name will help to build-up your Night Essence, your feeling of Night

Consciousness and will quicken your magickal vibration. This name should be given to no one else to know. It is your own Magickal Name that when used will bring you to Night Consciousness. Now, you must choose a second name.

This is the name that you will be known outwardly by to fellow Night Magicians. You should pattern this name after something unlike your Night Name. This name will be used on all correspondence with other Night Magicians and any published writings. The second name is your public name and is used in such rites and exercises. Remember, to know the name of a thing is to know its Eternal Essence and to have dominion over it.

In selecting a magickal name you are defining that Inner Essence. To tell another is to give him access to your Inner Nature. He may reach you and make demands of you whenever he chooses by knowing your inner name. Do not reveal it for any reason. You should always use your second or outer name as Night Magicians. To do so will insure that you will never be bothered here or hereafter. Both names are important and should be selected to help bring you into your Night Consciousness. Your Night Name will bring you closer into the aura of Night Magick. Having selected your Night Name you now must learn Magickal Protection in order to conduct Night Magick safe from outside influences.

#### 11. Night Pillar

What you are about to learn is perhaps the most valuable Night Tool you will ever acquire. There are many forces in the world which will attempt to do you harm if you practice Night Magick. By harm, I don't necessarily mean physical violence although that is possible. I am talking about the threat of harm to your subtle bodies: Astral, Mental, and Causal bodies. Harm to these bodies could cause serious emotional and mental sickness. There is also the threat of attack to your Etheric which usually translates to physical harm. For Night Magicians there is a serious threat of attack from Yang followers. This could be from so-called White Magicians and their use of magick against you. It could come from Christians, Jews, Muslims and so on. Attacks can come from collective emotional or mental energy meant to harm a Night Magician. A group of Yang worshipers gathered together in prayer praying for the demise of all Night Magicians everywhere could build up enough energy to harm the unprotected Night Magician. As you grow more magickal you will become very sensitive to subtle energies around you. Attacks could come from anyone who wishes you harm. You will need protection. You will need to build the Night Pillar. The Night Pillar is not just for protection.

The Night Pillar also acts as an invisible wall which will contain the energy you will be creating through Night Magick. This will allow you to build-up the energy to a great intensity before you release it to accomplish your will. This will increase the effectiveness of the magickal rites you create. So how do you build the Night Pillar.

You begin by calming and clearing your mind of extraneous thoughts. Close your eyes and visualize the Night Energy collecting around your form. See the Night Energy forming a pillar of protective force that extends around you about six feet. See that energy flowing below your feet and above your head. See yourself in a pillar of deep violet and emerald energies. See yourself in a pillar of darkest night. Know that you cannot be harmed while contained in the Night Pillar. Now say the following invocation:

"I am a Night Magician surrounded in a Pillar of Night Energy that cannot be penetrated. It repels all energy that would harm me. It repels all thoughts and emotional energy of my enemies. Through the Power of my Oversoul, I am protected in a Pillar of Night Energy and cannot be harmed. May this Night Pillar remain around me at all times keeping me out of harms way. So be it."

Say this invocation and visualize the Night Pillar around you until you can feel its protection. This energy comes from the Oversoul within. As you begin the invocation the Oversoul extends the Night Energy into your world through the silver cord. The silver cord is your life line to your Oversoul and through it all energy passes to you which sustains your life on Earth. You can invoke more of this energy and power into your life when you work in conscious union with your Oversoul. There are many different kinds of energy which can be invoked into your world through the Oversoul. The Night Energy of Protection is only one of them. You will learn about many more types of energy you can invoke and use towards the end of the book. What you want to remember about the Night Pillar is to use it often.

Always place the Night Pillar around you before you work Night Magick. Always place yourself in the Night Pillar at the beginning of each day. The more you use it the stronger it will become. The Pillar will protect you from all physical and psychic harm. You must learn to consciously keep the Night Pillar around you all the time. You should always remain in the Night Pillar. Everything that you practice in the lore of Night Magick should begin with the Night Pillar. You must always do this whether it's stated so or not. Through the Night Pillar

you will safely live and learn in Night Magick. You now have built a strong foundation upon which to live and practice Night Magick. You have learned what it is to be a Night Magician and to practice the lore of Night Magick. If you are ready to begin using Night Magick then let's consecrate your Night Study and Tools.

## 12. Invocation to Night Magick

This is a most sacred time in your life for it marks the beginning of your entry into Night Magick. You are going to perform a very sacred rite to mark your entry. You will, in this solemn rite, dedicate your physical, emotional, mental, and magickal energies to the practice of Night Magick. This rite is meant to convey to you the seriousness and importance with which you should view Night Magick. In this rite, you will learn the basics which will begin every ritual you will learn. In this rite, you will invoke the Night Energy into your Night Tools and Weapons and make them yours and yours alone. The Night Tools and Weapons will then be sacred and contain the Power of the Night. To begin, you must have your Magician's Study and Night Altar prepared.

To do this, have all your Night Tools and Weapons laid out on the Night Altar. Have the cord laid on the floor in a circle around the Night Altar. On the Night Altar you should now light the candles and the incense. Your bowl should be full of water and your chalice should contain wine or grape juice. Be sure and turn off the phones and lock the doors so you won't be disturbed. Once you have accomplished this be sure and have your Night Name selected. It is this name you will use in the performance of this rite. Now for the actual ritual.

You will begin by invoking the Night Pillar. Standing before your Night Altar and with your eyes closed see the Protective Night Energy pouring down from the Oversoul above you, through your head, on into your heart, and out into the study completely surrounding and interpenetrating the room. See the Light continuing through you and on into the Earth. At this point you should repeat the Night Pillar Invocation given earlier. Feel the Night Energy concentrate deeply within the circle boundary outlined by the cord.

Now pick up the bell and ring it six times in each major direction, that is North, South, East and West. Then repeat the following invocation, "I who am (give your Night Name) summon the Presence of all Deities in the Night Force to attend my ritual of Eternal Night. To witness my consecration of my Night Tools in the service of the Eternal Darkness. We now stand in the Eternal Night beyond time and space. Come and witness my Ritual of the Night". After this, pick up the salt container, and repeat the following: "By my sacred name, (give your Night Name), through the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Earth Deities, I invoke the Earth Night Power into this container of salt and now place the salt upon the earth to mark the boundary of my sacred circle." Visualize the Earth Deities filling the vessel with their power. Pinch a little salt lightly between your fingers dropping it on the floor over the cord going completely around the circle. **BE CAREFUL NOT TO STEP OUTSIDE THE CIRCLE FOR THE REMAINDER OF THE RITUAL.** Place the salt container back on the Night Altar and pick up the crystal bowl of water. Repeat the following: "May the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Water Deities fill this water and container and endow it with the Water Night Power." Visualize the Water Deities of the Earth filling the vessel with the power. With your left hand dip it into the water and sprinkle lightly the boundary you have already marked with the salt. Place the water bowl back on the altar and pick up the incense burner.

Repeat the following: "Let the Presence of the Four Winds of the Earth enter into the incense burner filling it with Air Night Power". Now face each direction, rotating counterclockwise, and see the Presence of each Wind Deity enter into the incense burner. Then circle four times in a counterclockwise manner around and within the Magick Circle. Place the incense burner back on the Night Altar and pick up the candle.

Repeat the following: "May the Presence of my Oversoul and the Fire Deities of the Earth place their sacred flame here within my candles and upon my Night Altar." See the Fire Deities come and dance around the flames and upon your altar. Place the candle back where it came from and pick up the chalice of wine or juice.

Repeat the following: "Let the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Darkness enter into the liquid and fill it with the Power of the Eternal Night. May this elixir give me strength, healing, and courage each day of my life." Feel the Power flow through you and into the chalice. See the energy collect and concentrate till the chalice glows with Night Energy. Then drink the liquid and you're ready to consecrate the other Night Tools.

You will begin with the oil so pick it up and repeat the following: "Let this oil be made sacred and filled with the Power of the Night. Let the Presence of the Oversoul and Night Spirit touch it with their might, courage, solitude, and darkness. For the oil is now sacred and made for anointing the Weapons of a Night Magician." Take a small amount of oil and touch the Pentacle and state, "May the Night Force flow into this Pentacle and bless all things laid on it".

Now it is time to anoint each weapon in your sacred arsenal.

You will pick up each Night Weapon, one at a time, and while placing a small amount of oil on each tool, repeat the following: "Through the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Darkness, I (Night Name), consecrate this Night Weapon in the service of Night Magick and the Eternal Night." Do this with the Night Amulet, Ring, Wand, Staff, Grimoire, Athame, Sword, Plate, Shield, and Cape. Now put the Night Amulet, Ring, Plate, Athame and Sword on your body. Place the Grimoire in the front center edge of your Night Altar. Put on the Night Cape. Place the Night Shield over your left forearm and in the left hand hold the Night Wand and in the right hold the Night Staff and state the following: "I, (give your Night Name), commit my all to the Oversoul and the Night Spirit within, and to the dedication of my Magickal Energies to the practice of Night Magick. I dedicate myself to the Oversoul within and to my union with it in Night Consciousness. May these Night Tools and Weapons serve me ever in this cause. So be it." Now face each direction and repeat the following: "Thank you Night Deities for your attendance at this sacred Night Rite. May we ever serve the Eternal Powers of Darkness here on Earth and the Omniverse forever. So be it." And that's it, you have finished your first night rite and all your Night Tools and Weapons are consecrated in Night Magick. At this point stop and re-enforce your Night Pillar and then take off all your Night Weapons and place them back upon the Night Altar. Leave the cord in place on the floor.

Each ritual will begin by your stepping into the Night Circle and putting on your Night Weapons and Cape. It is alright if you wear your Night Amulet and Ring outside the Circle. After this place the Night Pillar around you. Do not leave the Circle until the end of the ritual and be sure and re-enforce the Night Pillar around and through you before leaving the Night Circle. Go through the actions of consecrating the Night Circle with earth, water, air, and fire each time. Fill the chalice, say the invocation, and drink the wine each time. Then always ring the bell and summon the Night Deities. These are the basic procedures you will begin each ritual which takes place within the Night Circle. I hope you have had fun and are ready to begin learning about the first realm you will pass through on the Night Road. Let's go then to the Earth Realm.

#### CHAPTER IV

##### Earth Magick

##### 13. The Earth Realm

Since time began there has been traditionally four elements which make up the world of the Night Magician. These are the elements of Earth, Water, Air, and Fire. They are symbolic for the basic four worlds of being: that of the physical(Earth), emotional(Water), mental(Air), and causal(Fire). The Oversoul must express through each of these realms using the appropriate vehicle or body and ultimately gain mastery over each of them. So, I have divided Night Magick into four basic realms with knowledge, exercises, and rituals appropriate to each realm. Ultimately, the Oversoul, through you, working in and mastering each realm will have learned all that must be learned here upon Earth and return no more. The Earth Realm is your beginning point in becoming a Night Magician. I want to take you back to the beginning of time and the origin of the soul.

From an understanding of general cosmology, that is the origin of the Void, Monad/Godsoul/Oversoul and the soul of humankind, then this will help you to see the whys of a magickal evolution and the reasons for being on the Night Road that follows this magickal evolution.

There is no beginning to the origin of the Void. The Void has always been, is now, and ever will be. The Void is principle, unmanifest, and exists entirely in itself, from itself, and by itself. The Void is the potential and unmanifest Source of all that exists. The Void is the Life present in all things. It is omnipresent, omnipotent, and omniscient. From out of the Void, the potential and unmanifest Source, comes the Ultimate Yin and Yang Creators. The Spirit of the Spirits. The Ultimate Spirits are the first and only creations by the Void. The totality of all that the Void can be is brought into being in the Ultimate Spirits. The Ultimate Spirits derive all potential and essence from the Void, the potential and unmanifest. The Ultimate Yin and Yang then created twin parallel matrixes and so it began. What is now referred to here is also applicable for the Ultimate Yang.

The Ultimate Yin created beings like unto itself. Each of these Beings I will refer to as a Monad. Each Monad was created in order to share in the joy of creation with the Ultimate Yin. The Eternal Night gave to each Monad the potential of becoming all that It is. The Dark Goddess-God gave to each Monad the essence and potential for expressing the Eternal Darkness. Each Monad evolves into the Oneness of the Eternal Night by actualizing its Eternal Night's potential. Each Monad grows by bringing into manifestation the latent abilities and powers placed within It by the Eternal Night. Like the Eternal Night, each Monad

is given the right of free will to determine how it will do this. The free will of each Monad permits it to choose how it will create and what path of evolution to follow. When the Monad chooses to manifest its Abilities and Powers and to Create, the way of interest to you as a Night Magician, is by its descent into matter.

The material universe is made up of an infinite number of vibrational energies. The very highest of these energies is the substance upon which the Monad first creates. Through the Creative Power of the Monad, acting on the highest vibrational matter, the Monad first takes on form. This is not form as you understand form but something that is beyond your understanding. When the Monad first takes on form, it becomes two Godsouls.

The two Godsouls are true twin souls. They are the magical twins who shall evolve and create together by the Will and Power of the Monad. They each have free will and free choice of their own. Yet all creation that proceeds from them is related. All fragments of their divine spirit which are sent forth to be ensouled in the world of spirit and matter are thus related and united in purpose. In all they do the twin souls are united through the Will of the Monad. One Godsoul is predominately Yin with Yang and the other is totally Yin. This is a simplification of the energy systems but basically these twin Godsouls now have the creative energies ready to continue downward into material creation. Each Godsoul has the full potential and essence of the Monad and also the free will to use them. Because of the power and high vibrational energies of the Godsoul it cannot continue its direct descent into matter, thus it created an extension of itself into the lower worlds. This level of presence I have called the Oversoul. The Oversoul is a being of lower vibrational levels. It is very active on its levels in learning and creating and using the potential given to it by the Godsoul. Ultimately, the Oversoul must learn to create on the lowest of levels and thus it sends a part of itself into the lowest worlds of form and so is born the soul.

The soul is the instrument through which the Oversoul learns about the lowest worlds of creation. The human soul will return to the Earth many times for the human body does not last long. The human soul will return to experience many different lives in order that it might gain all the experience the Earth has to teach it. Once the human soul has gained all the experience the Oversoul needs then the human soul will move on to different worlds and dimensions in order to gain new experience. The soul gets its life force and direction from the Oversoul. This Power and Will flows through what is called the Silver Cord. This Cord is made up of high energy particles through which flows energy of varying frequencies. The soul operates through a mental, emotional or astral, etheric, and physical body. On Earth this is the human body.

The Soul (Oversoul and soul) is very delicate and composed of very high vibrational energies. If the Soul is to grow, develop, and evolve in material creation then it has to have a material vehicle through which to work. You could compare this to a person who wants to go into outer space.

Because outer space is very cold, lacks oxygen, and is a vacuum the human body could never withstand going out into space without being protected from it. So a special suit is designed which is heated, pressurized, and contains oxygen with which to breathe. It also contains many devices and sensors to work in space and monitor the surroundings. In order to protect the delicate Soul from the dense material surroundings, and for it to be able to work in and monitor its surroundings a special suit was devised. This is called the physical body.

The physical body is composed of the lowest and densest matter. It is designed to respond and interact with its material surroundings. There are the five senses: sight, touch, smell, taste, and hearing; and their respective organs: eyes, skin, nose, mouth, and ears. These allow the soul to react to the world around it. The hands, arms, legs, feet, and joints allow the soul to work with its surroundings with great dexterity and ability. The physical body is an excellent tool through which the soul to operate when it is properly attuned and under the control of the Oversoul. Unfortunately, for the majority of humankind this is not the case.

Too many human beings are the human body instead of the soul and Oversoul. The Oversoul/soul is not in charge but it is the human body which is in charge. The human body is basically undisciplined and unruly. Whatever the human body wants it gets and half the time it doesn't really want what it thinks it wants. Without the control of the Oversoul/soul, the body is helpless before the elements of life. The human body has no control over the world around it. Because of this current state, the Oversoul/soul does not pay attention to the human body. It is much like a car out of control. If you were the driver of a car that refused to go where you wanted it to go and was always headed for destinations unwanted and going past places uncared about, you would get out and just let it go till it crashed and burned. This is pretty much what the Oversoul/soul does concerning the human body. But there is a way to change this. You must identify, tune into, and become the Oversoul/soul.

You must gain mastery over the physical body. You are the Oversoul/soul and not the physical body. You must remember that you are eternal and only working through the physical body. It is your tool through which to work and experience the material world around you. You cannot allow the passions and desires of the body to rule you. You must develop control over the body. Properly channeled and controlled these forces can be used to your advantage instead of your detriment. You will learn through Night Magick how to develop this control and mastery. The Night Magician must attain through discipline, diet, exercise, and ritual mastery over her/his body and the world around her/him. But in all trials that occur in your life be easy on yourself. You will fail many times, but get up, dust off your knees, and go on vowing to try and do better. Never give up for all things are possible to those who follow the Night Magician's life. "The world is but a stage and we are the actors upon it," thus it was said by Shakespeare. This world is but an illusion and your attitude should be that of "in it but not of it". You must never become lost in the illusion of the game played by the majority of humankind. You must become the Master of Illusion, the Night Magician. Let me discuss with you for a moment the Stage upon which we experience life.

After many millenniums of experience there is a Soul who is qualified to become a Planetary Soul. The Planetary Soul is the Soul for every person upon that planet. Think of a pie sliced into an incredible number of pieces of pie. The pie as a whole is the Planetary Soul and you are one of those pieces of the pie. The Earth is the physical body of a very advanced Soul who I have told you is the Ancient Dragon Tiamat. Many of humankind have named this Soul, Gaia/Pan. This name representing the fe/male aspect of the Earth Soul. Every human being is a part of the Soul of Earth. Moreover every part of our human body, that is causal, mental, emotional, etheric and physical is directly effected by the Earth Soul. Our entire existence is constantly effected by the Energies of this Being which plays upon our own energies. Just as you are developing and evolving magickally so is Soul Earth. Soul Earth's evolution is far greater than that of yours but all are aiming towards the One Goal; every greater unfoldment of Night Consciousness. You must take care of the Earth Body.

It is your stage upon which you gain magickally and moreover it is the vehicle through which Gaia/Pan gains magickally and has its physical being. If the body of Tiamat is killed then the Soul will leave it just as if your body is killed your soul must leave it. If there is continued pollution and destruction of planetary life and resources then soon Tiamat will have to rid itself of the cancer that is causing physical destruction. I believe all of humankind should take this as a warning. It has happened before and it will happen again, Tiamat will not allow the death of its physical body before its proper time. It will do what is necessary to stop the destruction of its body just as you would. There is also another type of destruction happening on Earth and that is with alien races from the Yang matrix.

I know this subject may be tough for you to deal with but consider it as you have everything else, with an open mind.

This planet is a battlefield between Yang races and the Night Soul of this world, Tiamat. The opening poem was not just a piece of fiction. There are still Yang races who desire to possess the Earth for its wealth and who enjoy dominion over human beings. There are other Yang races who plan to slowly convert the Yin souls of this world into Yang souls. To change the basic polarity of all souls on this world. They believe that their polarity is the only appropriate polarity and would see the destruction of the Yin matrix of life. What evidence is there of this?

I can point out to you books on the market today that deal with alien visitation and kidnapping in which there are biological experiments going on to create a human/alien yang body in which they plan on placing Earth yin souls in order to ultimately change the polarity of the souls. Turning back to the pie example given earlier, think of what happens to the pie if pieces of it are removed never to be returned. I believe Soul Death is an appropriate term. You can look at the Yang religions that were introduced by the so-called gods or god and see that through their magickal practices they slowly change a soul's vibration from Yin to Yang. These of course are the religions that have no tolerance for other religions and have gone to great lengths to force conversion on others such as Christianity. There is also my own personal experience. I will not go further in discussing my personal experience except to say it wasn't pleasant and could have led to my ultimate destruction. What can you do?

You will learn many things to do in Night Magick. You will learn to place your body in attunement with the Yin Force of this planet. You are learning to unite with the consciousness of the Oversoul which is one in consciousness with the Planetary Oversoul. If enough human souls accomplish this the Night Force will become too strong for the Yang races to deal with. You have learned to take care of the Earth. Go out and help environmentalists who promote care of the planet. When you feel physically well the rest of you responds in kind and so it is

with the Earth. If the Earth Body is strong and healthy the Earth Soul will be strong and its aura will repel the alien races. In your meditations and visualizations, see the Earth and Its Soul strong in the Night Force. Use your Night Pillar and extend its protection around and through the Earth. Use your Night Pillar around every human body and soul to keep them strong in the Night Force. If enough of humankind joins in there will be no destruction of the Yin life force. If you think that aliens are fiction, DON'T. If you practice Night Magick you will draw their attention to you. I have had personal experience with aliens and my battle with them continues. I advise you strongly to wear your Night Amulet and Ring at all times and keep your Night Pillar strong through constant use. I hope you will take my advice and not have to learn through experience.

This is the Earth Realm where you have to live and practice Night Magick. In Earth Magick, I will introduce knowledge, rites, and exercises which will help to improve and refine your physical body. To make your body a more sensitive instrument to the Night forces around you. The more refined the instrument the greater the Night Power that will be able to be expressed through it. These exercises will not only benefit the physical but overlap into the development of the higher vehicles too. Earth Magick will give you ultimate control over your physical body and the world around you. So study with all your heart, persevere, practice, have courage and patience and you will attain the Earth. Your first subject for study and practice in the Earth Realm is Night Breathing.

#### 14. Night Breathing

Breathing is an important aspect in life and Night Magick. Breathing is essential to life and your well-being. That may seem like an obvious statement since without air you could not live, but actually breathing means more than just taking in air to sustain life. As you will see, breathing correctly and with the knowledge of what it can do for you will propel you far down the magickal road. Incorrect breathing leads to many problems in your life.

Does it seem that you run out of energy well before the day is done? Are you often nervous and irritable for no real apparent reason? Through correct breathing you can eliminate these problems from your life. You will be able to go through each day with boundless energy. Tension, irritability, and nervousness will disappear from your life. What is wrong with the way you breathe?

Stop right now and notice how you are breathing. Do you find that your breathing is shallow? Almost everyone in the world is a lazy breather. Deep breathing is a simple thing to do but in the beginning it will take some effort on your part for it to become a regular practice. Begin by taking a slow, deep breath and as you inhale, not only expand your chest to hold more air but force out your abdomen and feel that air going deep down into your lungs. When you have inhaled as much air as you can, try to take in just a bit more air. Really fill up your lungs. Now that you have inhaled as much air as possible, exhale very slowly and steadily. Bring your expanded abdomen in and force out the air till you are completely empty. At no time should you strain yourself in doing deep breathing. Even though you cannot go around in public being very obvious about this exercise you should, no matter where you are, breathe as deeply, slowly, and rhythmically as possible. You will do this consciously at first but soon this will become a part of your life without thinking of it. Do this and you will have a vibrant, youthful body. Why would an increase in air intake cause this increased vitality?

There is an active, vital, life force that energizes the world around you. In the Eastern languages this essence is called Prana. This Force is active not only on the physical plane but on all planes or dimensions of life. On the physical level, you breathe in the air which contains one aspect of this Force and which then is transmitted throughout your body via the nerve network. When you are feeling nervous, irritable, or tense, this can be due to a lack of this vital Force. The Pranic Force is not just for the physical body.

There are many aspects of the Pranic or what is called in Earth Magick, Earth Force. To utilize the Earth Force, you must learn to draw in this Energy within you. The technique outlined is termed Night Breathing.

To begin with, retire to your Magician's Study and sit comfortable with spine erect in your chair. For a few minutes practice deep breathing with your feet on the floor and touching. Your hands should be resting in your lap, palms down at all times. The indrawing of the Earth Force is through the action of the mind rather than the physical act of breathing. As your attention has been on the physical act of breathing let's now move it to the Earth Force surrounding you.

This Force is the Life of the world. Through it you have your well-being. Your mind must remain in a state of complete openness to the Earth Force. Your mind must be completely centered in the Earth Force alone. The mind must be without strain. You must not force the indrawing of the Earth Force. It is breathed into your being through a conscious attunement to

it. Feel the Earth Force entering into your body. See it penetrating every cell in your body and causing them to be filled Earth Light. Know that as it fills your physical body with Earth Light and Life that the Earth Force also charges your higher bodies with this same Emerald Light. As you continue to absorb the Earth Force know that you will achieve a Oneness with it. You will lose identity with your physical body and forget physical limitations for in the Earth Force there are no limits. You are the Earth Force, Limitless and Free. Through Night Breathing, you will become filled with the Earth Force. This Force will keep your body in Eternal Youth. You will be free of sickness. You will have abundant energy. Not only does the Earth Force quicken the physical but also the Emotional Body. Your outlook on life will improve. It will raise the vibration of your body so that depression, loneliness, and fear will not have a part in your world. The Night Force transforms the Mental Body. It can give you perfect memory. Your mind and all that it can do will be greatly enhanced. Your memory will be able to search back to when it first was. The Earth Force will help raise your overall Being into Night Consciousness. In addition to the practice of Night Breathing and the use of the Earth Force you must also study and practice the art of the Magician's Meditation.

#### 15. The Night Magician's Meditation

The Night Magician's Meditation is the beginning level at which you will begin to awaken your Inner Self. It is an exercise that is essential to your magickal growth. In the beginning stages of meditation, your sense of awareness will take place from your physical awareness, but as you grow your conscious awareness will move into your Oversoul. There are many benefits that can be derived from meditation.

Meditation will greatly benefit your health. The body will become inwardly calm and tranquil. The practice of Magician's Meditation can help to eliminate ulcers and other physical problems due to stress and tension. What meditation can do for you physically it can also do for you emotionally.

You can achieve a state of emotional tranquility and stability never before thought possible. No matter the confusion going on around you, you will be able remain steady and firm as a rock. It will develop your ability to concentrate and to expand the workings of your mind. You will be able to achieve true telepathic communication with those of similar magickal standing. Your memory will be vastly enhanced. Ideas from the Higher Mental Realm will come to you. From the Mental Realm, you will be able to contact and obtain information from the Akashic Record. This Record I will speak of later. You will be able to know the past, present, and future probabilities for yourself and for others. You will be able to gain a true understanding of your life and why you are here. There are preparations and precautions to take prior to meditating.

First, you must watch the food you eat. You must avoid fried foods and spicy foods close to the meditation period. Do not eat just prior to meditating for a full stomach can be quite discomforting. You will then need to set a quiet period aside each day. This period should be at the same time each day if possible. Early morning or late evening will be the best time. You should feel refreshed when you meditate so wash up prior to commencing. Now that you have taken care of your bodily needs it is time to set the proper atmosphere for meditation.

Retire to your Magician's Study and be sure that you can not be disturbed for say a half hour. Put on your robe, light your incense, and sit down in a very comfortable chair. Do not light your candle for the flickering will tend to distract you. Once you have done this you are ready to begin the Magician's Meditation.

Close your eyes now and place the Night Pillar around you. Follow this with Night Breathing. Now select the type of meditation. There are actually two ways of meditating, and they differ by your conscious directive.

The first way of meditating will have you direct your thoughts on a particular subject. For example, the subject can be on strength. You will want to look at the different types of strength. Try to understand how strength develops and how you can become stronger. You can go on to becoming Pure Strength and the qualities needed in your life to be Strength. As you continue to look fully at the subject of strength and understand all that there is about it your conscious thoughts will slowly be overshadowed by your Oversoul, and you will be given true enlightenment on Strength, or any subject you should choose. The second way deals with entering the Silence of your Oversoul.

Here you will not choose a topic but remain in a state of silence and complete Openness to the Indwelling Oversoul. You must remain completely free of thought. You must not enter into this meditation with cares or worries but surrender them into the care of your Oversoul. As you advance into the meditation you will become aware of Its Presence. You will feel Its Energy. Here the Oversoul will choose the subject of importance and instruct you directly. Remember, "to be Silent and Know".

Having chosen the type of meditation, turn your attention to within yourself and give open recognition to the Oversoul within. If you feel a slight sense of shaking or a raising of the heart beat do not let it bother you. It is a good sign that what you want is taking place. Remain very relaxed and allow your thoughts to drift on the subject. Do not overtire yourself. If at first you can only do five to ten minutes then that's fine. Do not push for results. The results will come in their own good time. Meditate only as long as you feel comfortable with it. After you have finished don't get up and plunge back into the work-a-day world. Take it easy and allow yourself a few minutes or however long is necessary to adjust to a faster pace of living. In Magician's Meditation, you slowed your rate of living considerably. Strive to attain but be patient for the results to happen. You will not attain all you can be overnight but someday the Night will be yours. There is nothing greater you can do for your quest on the Night Road than the sincere practice of Night Magician's Meditation. In Night Magician's Meditation you studied a method of changing your conscious vibration and attuning it with the Oversoul's Consciousness. Now you are going to explore the very depths and heights of the Realm of Vibration.

#### 16. The Realm of Vibration

The study of vibration is important to a Night Magician. The actual magickal progression made is a result of increased vibration of the physical, emotional, mental, and causal bodies. You must therefore begin with the lowest level of vibration, the physical, and study its nature. Vibration is movement. In the physical world, vibration is based on molecular motion or movement. The physical world is composed of small particles in motion which are termed molecules. Molecules are composed of small particles known as atoms. Atoms are composed of even smaller particles which are protons, neutrons, and electrons. If you could become small enough you would see that the electrons orbit around the nucleus like the planets around the Sun. If you took the analogy farther, you would see that the human body would be composed of many solar and galactic systems. The human body is in constant molecular motion which produces something akin to electricity. There are machines today which can measure this very fine electricity. The combination of this fine electricity added to the Energy of the Oversoul causes sentient life. All forms of matter produce this fine energy due to molecular motion.

Further, all matter, that is the mineral, plant, and animal kingdoms, are guided in development, just as you are, by a Higher Power and therefore have Life. This Life is perhaps not as you know Life, but yet it is Life. As you have seen, all forms of matter have molecular activity. This molecular activity is very active in some forms and slower in others. The rock has a very slow molecular, or vibrational rate, whereas the air has a very high vibrational rate. This rate of vibration is termed frequency. When the vibrational rate is high the frequency is high and the opposite is also true. You have learned that matter is in a constant state of motion. That all motion has a relative vibrational rate, or frequency, dependent on the molecular activity. An important part of the physical realm of vibration which goes on to touch all levels of vibration is light and color.

Light and colors are dependent on matter and its rate of vibration. Color is important in your physical life. In a moment, you will discuss how it effects the human body, but some background information on light and color will prove beneficial. Light is energy. Light is actually electromagnetic radiation. When light strikes an object the molecules absorb some of that energy, and in turn, that which is not absorbed is reflected and radiated out into the surrounding space. This radiation is perceived by the eyes as color. The different colors seen are due to the different frequencies of that radiation. This frequency is a slightly different term than that used to describe molecular activity. The frequency used to measure color is based on the fact that color is a radiation or energy. Light is separated into seven basic frequencies. These frequencies are seen as the colors red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. Red is of the lowest frequency and violet the highest. Here you have looked at the physical definitions of light and color. How, though, can light and color be of benefit to the well-being of your physical body?

You are familiar with how colors can effect one's mood. A blue room for example can give one a feeling of peace and relaxation while a red room would tend to make one feel energetic or even nervous. But few of us are aware of how colors can effect the physical body directly. The entire principle behind color healing is vibration. Every part of your body vibrates at a particular frequency. Disease is the result when any part of the body develops disharmony or the wrong frequency. Color radiation when directed at the particular area of imbalance, induces a sympathetic vibration into that organ and corrects the frequency of the organ back to its original frequency, and thus, good health. How can this be done?

Before explaining this procedure its best to give this WARNING!!! Do not go out based on these

teachings and setup a healing practice! If you are not a doctor, are you really sure of what is wrong with the person? You could be sued if you end up hurting someone. As you progress magickally, you will know through your Oversoul what is wrong with the person and what color to use. Use this science to help only those to whom you are close to and on yourself. Be absolutely sure of what you are doing. If you have any doubts, DON'T DO IT! This is a great healing science if used wisely. Be careful. There are several methods to induce color healing. No discussion will be made here of the use of color lamps for they will be replaced soon with a more advanced machine. What will be discussed is the use of color meditation and your own physical instrument, the body.

You are a channel for the higher energies. You are a magnet for these energies and by concentrating or meditating on the specific color necessary to be applied you will magnetize them to you and then be able to apply them to the one needing healing. Before discussing the actual procedure you must prepare yourself as you did in meditation. Be sure you are in good health or you could induce your illness into the one your healing. When you enter into meditation it would be good to get a sheet of paper with the color you wish to magnetize and gaze on it. As your meditation proceeds be sure your ankles and hands are crossed. This conserves the energy you are magnetizing. Visualize this color energy filling your Night Pillar. See the Pillar becoming filled with the color until it can hold no more. Then you are ready to pass it to the one in need of healing. If you are the one who needs healing see that energy penetrating the area in poor health. See that part of the body becoming whole and perfect. If it is another person or anything needing the color energy place your hands on the area that is ill. Again see that energy penetrating into that part and restoring it to perfect harmony and vibration. You do not necessarily have to be present to administer the healing energy. If the person is somewhere else see your energy moving to that person. Visualize that person and the area of illness and again see the energy making all whole and perfect. Be sure when you are finished that you wash your hands in cold running water. It will be necessary to continue the number of treatments once every hour until the condition is relieved. You should apply the healing for a period lasting fifteen minutes. These continuous treatments are necessary so that you are working in harmony with the cyclic nature of the body. This time period allows the body adequate time to use the energy being supplied to it. Also it allows you to know when to stop treatment, for sometime in the forty-five minute period, you can observe the healing process and its progress. The last subject to discuss is the colors themselves and what ailments they cure. You will begin with the lowest frequency of color, red.

Red is vibrant and alive. Red is a heating, vitalizing, and stimulating color. It is directly responsible for your physical vitality. In cases where there is a lack of energy red is an exceptional color. It is effective in the treatment of anemia and cancer. It vitalizes the blood and helps to purify it. Do not use this color when there is an inflammatory condition present or when the person is of excitable temperament.

The color orange has often been associated with the Sun. It is necessary for health and vitality. It influences primarily the processes of assimilation and circulation. The color helps to regulate the intake of food and is centered around the spleen. It is good for the treatment of asthma, bronchitis, colds, and epilepsy. It is further useful for the treatment of gout, inflammation of the kidneys, gall stones, cessation of menstruation, and mental debility.

The color yellow acts as a tonic on the nerves. It is an inspiring and mentally stimulating color. It is good for the treatment of dyspepsia, diabetes, flatulence, and constipation. Clear golden yellow is one of the most powerful forces against depression and limitations of every kind. Yellow stimulates the brain as well as exerting great therapeutic influence on the assimilative organs of the body. Yellow also stimulates the purifying action in the body for it effects the liver, gall bladder, and intestines in stimulating them and aiding in the elimination of the body wastes. Yellow improves the texture of the skin, heals scars, and heals other blemishes.

Green is the color of the Earth. It is the color of harmony and balance. It has a soothing effect upon the nerves. It has a very powerful effect on the blood supply and its distribution throughout the body. Green is an excellent tranquilizer and is further beneficial in the treatment of heart complaints, blood pressure, and headaches. Blue is the color of deep peace and harmony. It acts upon the body as a powerful antiseptic. It is excellent in the treatment of insomnia. Blue is good in the treatment of all throat diseases and in the treatment of gall bladder attacks, jaundice, skin abrasions, cuts, burns, and rheumatism.

Indigo is the Healer for the eyes, ears, and nose. It is excellent in the treatment of deafness, cataract, delirium tremens, and eye inflammation. It is good in the treatment of lung disorders, pneumonia, asthma, bronchitis, and indigestion.

Violet is the highest vibration of visible light. Its effect is primarily in the area of the brain. It is good in the treatment of mental disorders, cataracts, and paralysis. Creative artist and workers would benefit by surrounding their room with objects of this color and meditating and storing this color. It is excellent in the treatment of insomnia.

In closing, again use the colors carefully. Do not use them excessively. At all times, you should seek the guidance of your Oversoul. Never prescribe treatment to anyone. And above all, in the case of illness Consult your Physician! You can use this science to aid your healing and that of others, but it is not meant to replace the therapeutic care given by your Physician. I have made a small beginning in discussing the realm of vibration. I spoke of the vibrating world around us and how all life is in constant motion. I discussed the special world of light and colors and their relationship to the human body. In the next topic you are going to explore some fascinating information concerning the human body and how it works.

#### 17. Night Centers and the Physical and Etheric Bodies

In the Eastern languages the Night Centers are known as chakras. Night Centers are located in each type of body that you have, from the Etheric to the Mental Body. They are, in appearance, small whirlpool-like vortices of concentrated energy. The Night Centers are responsible for a number of functions. They are conveyors of the Night Force from higher dimensions to the lower ones. They act as step-down transformers taking the higher energy and lowering it to meet the requirements of each body. They further function as message centers. They connect each dimension from the higher ones to the lower with an internal form of communication keeping your entire system of bodies in rapport with each other. They have other functions but these will be covered in later topics. You are presently going to look at two bodies, the physical and Etheric, and the role of the Night Centers to each. Let's look at the physical body first. In the physical body there is a corresponding organ and/or gland to each of the Night Centers. The lowest of the centers is at the base of the spine and relates to the gonads. The second of these centers is located over the area of the spleen and is associated with the spleen/pancreas. The third Night Center is located over the navel area or the solar plexus and corresponds to the adrenal glands. The fourth is located over the heart region and relates to the thymus gland. The fifth is located in the throat area and relates to the thyroid gland. The sixth Night Center is located in the brow area and relates to the pineal gland. The seventh Night Center is located at the top or crown of the head and is associated with the pituitary gland. What is interesting and important to observe is that the organs make up the endocrine system.

These glands produce a substance called hormone which is spilled into the blood stream to regulate every cell in the body. These glands further effect the growth and development of the physical body; the way you feel; and even the way you think. The endocrine system is regulated by the nervous system. Here there is an important parallel. For every Night Center there is a nerve center that corresponds to it too. These nerve centers are closely related to the glands they regulate, which are those of the endocrine system. This leads us to the Night Centers, Etheric Body, and their relationship to your bodily control.

The Etheric Body is produced by the electromagnetic energy generated by the physical body. The Etheric is an exact counterpart to the physical body. The Etheric Body interpenetrates the physical body and extends from a half inch to four inches around the physical body and can be seen by the Night Eye as a whitish blue light. The Etheric Body is the lowest body where the Night Centers can be found. The Oversoul influences the body through the transmission of Night Force through the Higher Night Centers which continues to be stepped down till the energies enter the Etheric vortices which in turn affects the nerve centers, endocrine system, and the body overall. They are all interrelated. The two Night Centers which directly effect the well-being of the physical body are the lowest two.

The lowest center found at the base of the spine contains the Earth Fire. In the Eastern religions it is called Kundalini. I will discuss this Energy in a later topic but for now I will discuss the intake of Earth Force, a less concentrated form of the Earth Fire. Those who have ever lived in a high-rise apartments and worked in similar offices may recall feeling very tired and run down. This is due to lack of direct contact with the Earth. It is essential for humans to remain in contact with the Earth. When the body makes direct contact with the Earth, the base Night Center is then able to absorb the Earth's energy. Everyone should take time to get outdoors in direct contact with Mother Earth and absorb that vital energy. In a later topic, I will present a rite to help keep the Earth energies high in yourself. The second Night Center concerned with your well-being is located over the spleen/pancreas and absorbs the pranic force generated by the Sun.

This is the second energy necessary for the well-being of your physical body. An adequate intake of this energy will give you good health. It will give you vitality, youth, and a zest for life. As was mentioned earlier, the Etheric extends beyond and around the outline of the body

approximately a half to four inches. It is bluish grey to bluish white in color. When a person is in good health the Etheric will be strong in appearance and extend several inches beyond the outline of the body. In poor health or when one is low in energy the Etheric will be close to the body and hard to see. How do you see the Etheric?

Etheric sight is the best way to begin to see magickally. Since this energy is of lesser vibration than that of auric energy it will be easier to see with the Night Eye. For a moment, let's discuss exactly what is the Night Eye and then the mechanics of how it operates.

The Night Eye and its existence have been known since the time of the Ancient Ones. In the Eastern languages it's referred to as the "Third Eye". The Night Eye is a magickal organ that when activated allows you to see the higher dimensions. The Night Eye is also capable of enlarging microscopic particles till you can see them. This is very similar to the microscope and its function. For most, the Night Eye is closed and blind to the higher realm, but through the techniques and practices in this work you will learn to use and see through the Night Eye. The mechanics of the Night Eye will be discussed in greater depth in a later topic. For now, the Night Eye is related to the sixth Night Center and the pineal gland. When they are functioning under your voluntary control then you are able to see magickally. Knowledge of the exact mechanics is not necessary in order for you to see through the Night Eye. What is necessary is knowing the techniques for opening and using the Night Eye and then plenty of practice.

Therefore, let's perform some exercises to begin its development.

To convince yourself more fully that there really is an Etheric Body begin with the following experiment. One night as you are in bed, lie on your back with your feet spread apart. Then slowly bring your feet together until you can feel them touch each other. When you feel them just touch try and see if you can put them together any closer. You will be surprised to find that you can. This distance is the area occupied by the Etheric. You can also do this with another person. Try touching the other person on an area of bare skin. The neck and head area is the best. Touch them with one finger very lightly and then slowly remove the finger to about one inch away. The person will not be able to tell the difference when you are touching and when you are not. Now that you are more fully convinced that there is an Etheric, let's move on and see it.

It will be easier if you get another person to help you. Have that person stand against a neutral background, the best color is white, and have them relax and breathe deeply. The lighting is very important. The light should be behind you and positioned such that it will not produce a shadow on the subject. The lighting should be dim. You should now position yourself away from the subject about six to ten feet and sit or stand in a comfortable position. Relax and breathe deeply. Look at the subject and let your eyes relax. Do not concentrate on seeing anything. Look beyond the subject as if looking off into the distance. The subject's Etheric Energy will extend around the outline of the physical body. If you are alone you can still practice seeing the Etheric.

Have a mirror positioned in front of you such that you can see the upper body outline. Have behind you a background of neutral color. Do the same as outlined above as if you had someone before you. In all the work, outlined above, do not become discouraged if results do not occur the first time. Be patient and know that all is, and will, work for you if you but try. No one can become a Master Night Magician without great practice and perseverance. So you, too, can be a Master of Night Magick if you will but practice and persevere. You leave the Realm of the Etheric and Magickal Sight to enter into the Realm of Magickal Sound.

#### 18. The Power of Sound

Ever see an opera singer shatter a crystal glass? It is said that words are things and once spoken may cause the very thing to happen. Can there really be so much to the spoken word? Let's explore the physical properties of the spoken word, or in other words, sound and its properties and discover the secret.

You first must learn that sound is caused by vibrating structures. That for sound to travel it must move through a material substance or medium. Sound travels as a wave motion. As a sound wave travels, in a medium, small displacements occur to the molecules in that medium or substance. These small displacements are a regular collective motion in which all the molecules, in a small volume of matter, move together. Think of this motion as compared to a small volume of water held by a container in which you would see a wave moving in the volume of water. This ordered wave motion is superimposed on the random thermal agitation or vibration of the molecules. We, therefore, look at sound waves as the molecules of the substance jiggling back and forth in a regular fashion. You know that sound is the result of vibrating bodies but beyond this you must know that a traveling sound wave transports energy.

When this sound wave is incident on, or striking, a body of matter there is absorption of that

sound wave's energy by that body. In some cases this will force the body to vibrate at the frequency of the incident wave. A state of resonance will occur when the vibration of the body and that of the incident wave are close in natural frequency. Sound can do some phenomenal things. For example, remember the high pitched note of the singer, when it is incident upon the crystal glass, causes it to break. But even greater is the Power of the spoken word or sound energy, when that energy is transmitted on the carrier wave of creative magickal thought. The spoken word is endowed with the Night Force when the creative thought behind that word is that of Night Consciousness. Your words are endowed with Night Force when your Magickal Consciousness is that of the Oversoul. Your words are as potent as your consciousness is equal to that of Night Consciousness. For your words to be life and accomplish that where they are sent, then your consciousness must be that of the Oversoul. Your will is the selector of the words, but for them to be more than mere words they must be endowed with Night Force through Night Consciousness. Let's try it.

To begin with first see yourself as the Oversoul. Feel the Night Presence of your own Oversoul selecting the words with which you wish to create with. Then speak the words knowing that it is not you that says the words, but that it is the Oversoul who says the Words. Then those Words will go forth and do as they are sent forth to do. The greater your attunement with your Oversoul, the greater will be the potency of the Words. Keep your thoughts in tune with your Oversoul at all times. For your words to take on the Night Force you must become the Oversoul in all you do. Repeat the Words over and over again till you can feel the words take on a life of their own. Repeat them till your words are endowed with Night Force then they will go forth and create as you have said. There are no limitations to what your Words in Night Consciousness may do. They can bring to you your heart's desire. They can literally move mountains. They can create life. There are no limitations to what you can do, so long as it is in accord with your Oversoul. As you are filled with the Sound of the Oversoul, now to fill yourself with the Energies of the Earth.

#### 19. Earth Rite

Your body is very much like that of the Earth. As was shown in an earlier topic, the body has interspaced in it an Etheric Body. This is your magnetic field just as the Earth has a magnetic field. It is essential to your good health to be in contact with the Earth. The Earth currents mixed with your own magnetic currents keep you in good health. You will experience less tension and frustration. If you can do nothing else you should get out into the country and go barefoot. Here though, I would like to introduce a rite which will allow you to absorb a great deal more Earth Energy.

The Earth's energy is of the highest order. You may feel that the Earth is an unclean place and that its energies are of the same order. This is not true! Man's attitude is the harmful energy which is slowly destroying the Earth itself. From the Oversoul's viewpoint the Earth is covered in a dense blanket of Man's wrongful attitude concerning the Earth. The Earth is the Body of a magickally advanced Being and Its Energies are of the deepest order. Let's look specifically at how to absorb these life giving energies.

The only place to do this rite is outdoors. You should select a place which is free of Man's urbanization. Go out into a park or a private woods. Go somewhere so that you won't be disturbed. Once you have selected a place that feels right sit down and get comfortable. Your bottom should be in direct contact with the Earth. Do not sit in a chair. Next begin with deep breathing, relax, and let all tension go. When you are perfectly relaxed begin to feel your own Etheric Body. Feel your magnetic current touching the magnetic current of the Earth. When you breathe in, you will draw the Earth Energy up into your body via the Night Centers. See this energy flowing up through the base center and flow on higher and higher through each center until it reaches the crown center. When it has reached this far, hold the energy there and allow it to penetrate your entire being. Then, as you exhale, see the tired and tense energies of your own body flow back out of your body and being absorbed by the Earth. The Earth will change and charge these energies with Earth Force. Continue this exercise as long as you feel comfortable. During this exercise you should feel a communion and Oneness with the Soul of the Earth. The Earth is a Magickal Fountain of the Darkest Night. Drink from it and be renewed!

You have traveled far on the Earth Road. You have learned a great deal about yourself. You have come to know the hidden faculties and powers that lie within you. But as all things on Earth must end so in the next topic, you will come to know your own ending and this chapter on Earth Magick.

#### 20. The Physical Realm of Death

It has always been said that people fear the unknown. One of the greatest unknowns in life is death. Dying is as important as living on Earth. Dying does not have to be a big unknown.

There does not have to be fear of death. To end the fear of dying one must look at death and understand it.

Your life is sustained only so long as the silver cord is attached to your physical body. This is your lifeline from your Oversoul to that which you know as "I". In the actual physical process of dying it takes three complete days for this cord to separate. The body should be left alone and undisturbed as much as possible till then. As you are separating, you feel like a cloud drifting over your physical body. After three days, you will cast off like a ship adrift on the seas. The process of dying is entirely painless and you should have no fear. Before casting off for the next dimension, you are required to view the actual process of the preparation of your body for burial. This is to convince you that your physical body has actually died, but that you still live. Here, it might be appropriate to say something about those who are left behind. In the west, you have been taught that you should grieve for the one who has departed. It would be more appropriate to celebrate for they now have left this world for a new world of happiness and joy. In this new world there is no suffering, hunger, or struggle for survival. You grieve over another's dying for many reasons, but mostly at the loss you feel and at being alone. How can you overcome this grief?

First, you should realize that you will someday be reunited with them if you wish. Only those in harmony with each other can reunite, for only harmony can exist on the other side. You should also realize that you should not grieve so much for the one gone, for you tend to disturb their rest and recuperation on the other side. What can you do to help the person who is suffering from grief?

The best help you can provide is to be the "listening ear". You should do everything in your power to help the person talk out their grief. Let them talk to you about the sorrow they feel over their loss and talk about how it was in the past. Keep them company and let them cry all they want. Crying and tears are the greatest safety valve the human body has. This prevents an emotional overload causing perhaps insanity. Allow the person a reasonable time to express their grief. But this should not go on for ever and ever. Grief can not be allowed to go too far. It will cause the person to develop self-pity and this is just as bad. Dying to this world is birth to the next and higher world. There is a practice which will assist you in the process of dying. You should prepare yourself through meditation. Meditate on the subject of death as has been described here. See yourself at the time of dying. Feel and know yourself developing as a cloud of consciousness over the physical body. See yourself actually trying to get out of that old dying house. Then you should see and visualize the person you want to come help you and meet you. Feel their presence very strong and know that they are there to help you make the transition. If you have no one special to come get you, know that there are special helpers waiting to assist you into the next dimension. Have no fear for you are never alone. Know that just as soon as there is complete separation of the silver cord from the physical body that they will assist you to the next realm. Then allow yourself to relax and wait out the physical process of dying. There is no pain nor fear to experience, only the beginning of a new day in a new world. The only thing you will experience is the feeling of going home. This simple process of meditating on the transition from one world to the next can relieve much anxiety and worry when the actual time seems near. There is no way that meditating on death can bring about the actual thing. Only the Oversoul knows the time of transition and can cause it to happen. So rest assured, that in dying from the physical world, the process is simple, easy, and merely a phase of transition necessary to enter the next world beyond. Now you must also make the transition from one chapter in Night Magick to the next.

You must leave behind the Earth Realm and enter the Water Realm. You have seen many wonders in the Earth Realm. You have learned better ways of breathing and things about your body you may have never known about. You are opening your Night Eye by learning about and seeing your Etheric Body. You should be acquiring better health and a sounder mind through meditation and the use of colors. I must emphasize here, before leaving Earth Magick, that no matter how far you go do not stop practicing the techniques, rites, and exercises learned early in this book. Always take time to meditate and practice Night Breathing. All the things you have learned, so far, are essential for your success later on. If you are ready to explore a fascinating realm and discover many new wonders, then let's enter into the exciting Realm of Water Magick.

## CHAPTER V

### WATER MAGICK

#### 21. The Water (Astral) Realm

Here you will enter a land of great beauty. A land of Harmony and Peace. In the last topic, you had just left your dying body, the silver cord had separated, and you were set off adrift. At this point, it is essential that you believe that there is continuity in life after physical death,

otherwise you will simply drift in a dense, dark fog, until slowly you realize, that you are still conscious and alive. As soon as doubt is gone, the clouds will dissipate and your loved ones will be there to help you.

In the first stage of transition, you will be allowed time to recuperate. The process of living on Earth and the troubles of the long years spent there have made you very weary. In the new realm that you have just entered, you are given time to rest from your journey on Earth and to adjust to the Astral Realm. Everyone, no matter what their magickal attainment, must enter this level of the Astral Realm. It has been referred to, by some religions, as purgatory. You are here in order to rest, purify yourself of human dross and make decisions about your magickal future. Your magickal development determines the level of purgatory you first arrive at.

For souls who are of the lowest and crudest of development, there is a very low vibrational level for them. At this level, acts of the worst kind, akin to their own vibrations, are portrayed before them. The things that they did wrong on Earth are done to them. This is a very dense region. This is not a land of punishment and torture, but a place to show the individual the folly of such a life and a place to rid the soul of its denser energies. This is not Hell. There is no such place as Hell. If Hell is anywhere it is right here on Earth. It is what humankind has made of the Earth.

Above this there is the next level which some go immediately to and some come up to from a lower level. This level is for souls who allowed their lower passions to rule them. For those who sought after money and power without maintaining the Eternal Night Balance. This region is very much akin to the physical plane just left behind. The Astral surroundings will be very similar to those of the Earth. Here the souls will remain, till they rid themselves of the coarser Astral material, so that they may go ever higher. They rid themselves of this dense Astral material by learning control of their passions. They must make up the Eternal Balance. From here we go to the level you probably rose to from the beginning.

You rise to the level where generally all begin who are of a basically good nature. This land is filled with beautiful parks and lakes. There are very beautiful buildings all around you. There are colors never before seen by you. The air is alive with energy and life. Animal life is abundant and tame. There is beautiful music everywhere in the air. Here in this realm no disharmony can occur. No one can meet anyone who would cause them unhappiness of any kind. When you first arrive, your loved ones or magickal helpers will be there to assist you. In this realm, all that you want is produced by your thoughts. Travel is by thought. If you want to wear clothes then you must think of yourself dressed as you want to be dressed. Your nourishment is all around you. All you have to do is breathe. Your physical habits that you learned on Earth will still be with you. You may feel that you still have to eat. This is fine. You need only think of the food you want to eat plus the table and so forth necessary to eat it with. But the sooner you learn to forget the old physical habits, and learn and experience your new Astral Body, the sooner you will be able to progress. This is a very real world. This world is as solid and real to its inhabitants as your own Earth is to you. But there are some who see this realm slightly different.

For some souls who believe in an exact type of heaven according to their religious beliefs, or even of the opposite region, and feel that this is where they are going, then this is what they will see. If they believe that they will see the Pearly Gates and St. Pete at them, then this is what they will see. Gradually though, imperfections will show up here and there. The gates may squeak or even fall off the hinges as they start to open. The angels, flying about, may suddenly be wearing flannel shirts and play off-key on their rusty harps. When the person has enough doubts about their make-believe heaven, then like a dream, it will disappear and the real Astral Realm will appear and so their beloved ones too.

It is best to keep an open mind when you make the transition. This will quicken your entry into your new realm and life. After you have become adjusted to this new realm, you will be escorted to a building where you will review your recent life and past lives you have lived. All that you have ever done will be shown to you on what has been called in some religions the Akashic Record, and by others, the Book of Records. Let's look at this Record and see what it is?

The Night Record, as you will come to know it, is a special energy upon which everything that has ever occurred to anyone and anything is recorded. There is further shown, on the Night Record, the probabilities for the future. This Record not only can show what has occurred on the Earth, but for anyplace located anywhere. This Record can be seen by those who have made the Earth transition in order to look at their life just lived, and by those of high magickal development who have a need to see. The Record is not for the use of just anyone. So, you were just entering the Night Record Hall and preparing to review your life. You see the things you did and the things you shouldn't have done. You see the things you were supposed to

have done and learned. No one judges you but yourself and your Oversoul! You are your own sternest judge. It is through your Oversoul that you see where you have gone wrong and what your Oversoul wanted you to accomplish in your life. You are then led out of the Hall by your guide and taken to a council of advisors. These advisors are trained to aid you in reviewing your lives and determining the best means for accomplishing the previous desired results wanted by your Oversoul and thus planning your future. You are placed in the proper circumstances, at the proper time, to achieve the desired results. After this planning, you will retire to the Astral Realm of your vibration and rest and prepare yourself for the next phase of life.

You are responsible for all that you do in life. You are responsible for the debts you occur in life and for repaying your debts. No one will pay your debts except you. The bad and good you create is called Karma. Karma and the Astral Realm are deeply related. It is at this plane of life that you make decisions which will effect your future. Until you learn the lessons necessary to be learned on the Earth plane then you must continue to return until you have learned all there is to be learned. Who determines when you have learned all that there is to be learned? The Oversoul is who!

In a Process not described here, your future is woven out of your magickal essence in the Astral Realm. This magickal fabric that is being woven contains the basic kinds of programs. By programs, I am referring to programs very similar to that used by the computer so that it can carry out its basic functions. One of your inner programs sets for you predetermined events which you must experience. These events are the results of energies you have set into motion from out of the past which must be again experienced and worked through. Further, they can be events, not necessarily a result of your past but of events which you need to experience to make you stronger and a better instrument for your Oversoul. The second program is for you to make.

These are periods which allow you to determine the path you will choose. They are like a blank tape upon which you write your future. You know when you have entered these periods for you feel like a ship adrift on the seas. All the familiar surroundings, experiences, and securities in your life are gone. They are not easy times for you, but they are the greatest periods for your soul growth. They bring to you periods of inner growth, new directions in your life, and a chance to accelerate your magickal growth. In these periods, you are the Captain of your Destiny. By the choices you make and the opportunities you take to advance, your future is set in motion. These periods allow you to clear up excess karmic debt. They will bring to you new friends, teachers, and many changes which if taken advantaged of, will allow you to achieve great magickal growth. You must watch for these periods and take all the advantage of them you can. You have to be tough. They will test the very essence of that which you are made of. You must do the very best you can in all that you do. You must be strong and know that you are guided. You never fail in life if you can say that you did your best. You can gain these learning experiences in the Astral Realm just as you can learn them on Earth. So why would you want to leave the Astral world.

In the Astral, life is full of harmony and beauty. It would take a long time to learn even the easiest of lessons. So, in order for the Oversoul to grow at a fast rate, it chooses to send a part of itself, being you, to learn quickly in the "School of Hard Knocks". You know that you grow fastest when you have to learn the hard way. You learn your lessons quickly and well. If life was all fun and games you would never learn, so life is not easy. There are some lessons that can only be learned on Earth. A hard life may not necessarily be a sign of large karmic debt, but a period of quick growth and possible advancement. How many lifetimes does it take before you don't have to come back here anymore?

No one can really say how many lives it will take except your Oversoul. There is only so much that can be learned from each sojourn on Earth. There are so many things that must be learned from living on Earth. You keep coming here to the Earth until you have learned all the lessons necessary and until the Oversoul is in charge of your life. Each of your lives adds to the Eternal Essence which is your Oversoul. Yet this idea of reincarnation or the returning to life on Earth time and time again scares many.

They don't like reincarnation because they are afraid that they will lose their individuality. Well, you never lose that individuality. Your Oversoul can be compared to a vessel of water. In that vessel of water, if you add some red dye the water will appear red add the color yellow and you will have orange. Each color is still there but their added essence creates a new whole. Thus you add each individuality into the Oversoul. The Oversoul grows and becomes more than it just was by that new addition. You are still that individuality but you are in cooperative union with all the other parts which make up the sum, which is the Oversoul. When you have learned all that must be learned, then you no longer have to return to the Earth.

You then pass beyond the Astral World when you have learned all that you have to learn there. There are many things to learn in the Astral.

There is the special group that is responsible for the souls making the transition from the Earth to the Astral. There are those who weave the soul fabric for a soul's journey to Earth. There are also teachers, doctors, nurses, advisors, and guides to those still living on Earth. You can, after gaining all that you must learn in the Astral, die or leave this dimension and go on to an even higher realm. You could also go on to a more advanced planet and civilization and begin the cycle of life and death there. The variables are endless and the choice of your Oversoul. I have referred to the Astral Realm as the Water Realm. In Night Magick, the things you will learn of this realm are known as Water Magick.

From the beginning, the Ancients have likened the Astral Realm to water because things of the Astral involve the emotions. The Astral Body is the body of emotions. You feel and express emotions because you have an Astral Body. It is the purpose of Water Magick to help you gain control over, and to refine, your Astral Body. The instruction, exercises, and rites are presented here to accomplish this purpose. This is the hardest body to gain control over. The emotions in most people run wild and out-of-control. People give into their emotions without trying to gain any self-control. You have to learn to control your emotions in order to have magickal growth. You must make the Astral Body an instrument worthy of the Oversoul. It must become an Instrument through which the Oversoul pours out Its Night Energies into the world. You must strive at all times to be consciously aware that as you feel and express emotions that actually it is the Oversoul who feels and expresses through you. That control over your emotions and the expression of Night Force comes only through constant communion with your Oversoul. Strive for this communion at all times. You are the Oversoul in emotional expression here on Earth. Through the Oversoul you will succeed. Let's begin immediately learning exercises for emotional control and magickal advancement.

## 22. The Astral Body and Exercises for Emotional Control

On each realm of life that the Oversoul lives on there is a necessity for a vehicle made up of that realm's essence in order for the Oversoul to find expression in that realm. The vehicle you are most familiar with is the physical body. It is made up of dense physical matter. You know from earlier discussions that there is a large amount of space between all the molecules of the physical body. Interspaced in the physical body can be found the Astral molecules which make up the Astral Body.

In the Astral Realm, your Astral Body and all the Astral surroundings are as solid and real to you as is your physical body and surroundings, when you are in the physical realm. The Astral Body is much more refined, and vibrating at a higher vibration, than is the physical body. The Astral Body has the same identical form as your physical body. When you are in the Astral Realm though, your Astral Body is very beautiful and without imperfections. There are no signs of ageing as there are in the physical world. The Astral form is very beautiful and the face is of exquisite beauty. There is no ugliness or lack of harmony in the Astral. The Astral Body exists simultaneously with the physical body and all other bodies as well. While you are in the physical body, the Astral Body is the body through which you feel. It is the body through which the Oversoul impresses and communicates with you.

At night, when you sleep, it is the body through which you experience dreams. Dreams are often distortions of your experiences in the Astral Realm. The Astral Body is the body of emotions. The Astral Body can be likened to an emotion magnet. When you express an emotion, you actually charge the surrounding Astral material with that emotion. You have experienced this happening.

For example, when you have gotten someone angry, you can actually feel the atmosphere around that person become alive with anger. You have also seen this when someone expresses love for another. The Astral material which surrounds you and the physical world is made up of charged Astral Energy. For the Earth, this energy is of a dense nature.

There are all kinds of emotional energies which make up the astral material around the Earth. These energies range from love to hate. On the Earth you can have inharmony and discord and harmony and accord. This is what is meant by dense. You can express any emotions while on Earth.

When you express an emotion, such as hate, the energy which is of like quality in the Astral is attracted to you. You can see that your hate, added to the greater hate which is surrounding you only makes your hatred more intense. You can then become consumed with hate, so much so, that you may lose control and seriously hurt through that hate. Long after the hate seems to have left you, it still remains within your Astral Aura. The slightest thing can trigger again this hate reaction and more hate energy will be generated. This is what happens from a lack of emotional control.

As I've said, the world as a whole is made up of many kinds of emotional energies. The energies are there to use and express with control. Without control, you become a pawn for domination by the emotional energies surrounding you. You must begin by learning to refine your Astral Body. To learn to place it under the control of your Oversoul. Let me introduce some exercises which will help you gain self-control.

Begin by deliberately slowing yourself down. When you drive on the road always let the other person go first. Slow down when you drive. If you will drive the speed limit, or five miles an hour below it, you will be passed by all. When you walk do it slowly. Let others enter a building or room ahead of yourself. The idea is to slow down. This is the first exercise and the next involves your use of meditation.

When you are in meditation, visualize a cleansing energy moving through your Astral Body and Night Centers. See that energy cleansing all emotional energy and replacing it with the Night Force. Visualize bliss, peace, and ecstasy filling your entire being. Next, visualize any act which you know produces an out-of-control emotional response within yourself. See that event occurring and you remaining in perfect control. Do this with all events and slowly you will gain control. Learn to disassociate from an emotional world of chaos.

The world rids itself of an over abundance of chaotic energies through natural means. These include such events as hurricanes, tornados, earthquakes, floods, and violent storms. They are the world's safety valves when the human emotional energies become too much. You can help to prevent these occurrences by correcting your own energy production. In meditation, you can visualize the entire world and do for it what you did for yourself above. See that cleansing energy fill the world. See the emotional energies of humankind balanced and in order. If you will do this daily the world will become a more stable environment. This is your first step on the Road of Water Magick. Your next involves the Astral Aura and its relationship to colors.

### 23. Astral Aura, Color, and Exercises

Around you, shaped like an egg, is the electromagnetic energy known as the aura. Each body produces its own aura. The most studied aura is the product of the Astral Body. I will discuss the astral aura, its relationship to colors, and exercises for seeing and strengthening the aura. The aura surrounds your body like an egg with the point at the feet. In the average individual the aura extends approximately twelve to eighteen inches around the body. As you develop magickally the aura enlarges. The electromagnetic energy is perceived by the Night Eye as color.

In the Astral aura, these colors reflect the emotions which make up the individual. The colors of the aura generally extend up to the eyes with the halo region just beyond that. Out of the top of the head extends a fountain of energy in the more advanced soul. This halo region is the strongest region of energy and is the easiest to see using your Night Eye. On the outer fringes of the aura is the Auric Sheath.

This is a skin-like film and completely encloses the aura. On the auric sheath, which can be compared to a translucent screen, the subconscious mind projects a variety of thought pictures. On this screen can be seen images of thoughts and even past life images. Before you learn to see the aura, let's look at what the auric colors reveal about people.

To begin with, some of the colors seen reflect current emotional expression. For example, anger will flash into the aura as a deep, dark blackish-red. This color will generally last only as long as a person feels the emotion, although residuals of this anger will remain for sometime. The second kind of colors seen reflect long standing emotional states. You'll remember in the last topic that the emotional energy produced by your Astral Body was a magnetic attracter for similar energy.

For example, if you become angry a great deal, then this energy tends to concentrate in your aura. The concentration tends to increase for surrounding anger energy is attracted to the anger energy already in your aura. Thus, you will see a heavy concentration of blackish-red in your aura which remains there over long periods of time. It won't dissipate so long as you continue to create this energy. This applies to all kinds of emotional energy.

There are seven basic colors in the aura. They are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, indigo, and violet. All the colors and their shades indicate a particular emotion or something about the character of an individual. Take each color and try to learn as much about it as it pertains to people. Some things you will learn about colors will come from your experiences over the years. Colors can first be broken down into two main groups. The red, orange, yellow group are full of energy. They represent people who are vibrant. These are people who are extroverts. They are the worlds' socialites. The second group, green, blue, indigo, and violet are the introverts. These are the quiet, less social people. They are more concerned with their interests than those of the world.

The color red rules the physical world. It is the color of Earth's fertility. It is the color of activity and creativeness. When seen as a clear, bright red in the aura it signifies people who possess the attributes of ambition, leadership, sociability, and strong character. It indicates force, vigor, and vitality in people. They will have a strong sex drive. They will be pioneers. They will love adventure and have a great need for new friends and new things. These are very aggressive people. This does lead to some problems.

Red makes people very impulsive. They are apt to be abrupt and impatient in all things. They are very earthy in their ways. This is the person with clear, bright red in their aura. But there are many modifications to the color red that can be seen in the aura. Dark red indicates a deep passion or emotion within. A person who is sometimes domineering and brash. A light red indicates irritability, nervousness, and one who is excitable. A bright red flashing on a black background indicates extreme anger arising from hatred and malice. A brick red is for conceit and reddish brown is for deceit. A dark scarlet is for the strongest, sensual love. A coral color pink is for immaturity in teenagers; childishness and insecurity in adults. A clear, rose pink is for a friendly, selfless loving person. The people who have red in the best and clearest colors are leaders of the world. They are one-pointed, high spirited, and seek after what they want on their high driving force. These are people of high energy and a color you could use some of in your aura. This is the color of creation.

The color orange is related in some ways to the color red. The color orange is formed by the blending of the red and yellow colors. It is the color of vitality. When this color is found in the aura it indicates people who are in good health and full of vitality. Orange indicates that they are considerate towards others. They are the humanitarian. It can further indicate people who are creative, even to the extent of genius. This is a social person. Again, you see the red nature of this color. These are people who like to get along with others and be liked in return. They like to lead an adventurous life. They look for events in their lives which offer excitement. They are lovers of freedom and look forward to all that is new. Shades of orange represent many things.

A dark orange indicates one full of self-pride. A brownish orange represents one who is lazy. It could also indicate someone who is subject to kidney trouble. If muddy and cloudy orange is present in the aura it indicates a person of low intellect. But yellowish golden orange in the aura shows self-control and efficiency in all things. I have indicated what orange can mean when seen in the aura. Let's go a bit further and see what orange induced into your aura through meditation can do for you.

The color orange is a color which can induce change into your system. It is an energy for dealing with problems which can be changed to a more positive situation. For example, let's say you have an inferiority problem. You always feel unmatched towards any problem. You perhaps have a low opinion of yourself and never feel able to deal with life. The orange light can change this attitude. It can make you feel free of limitations. It will add zest and optimism in your life. Orange helps to induce change into your thinking processes so that you can assimilate new ideas. It also induces stability in your thinking. As you will recall, orange is made up of two colors. The first was red and the second is yellow.

Yellow is the color of the mind. It signifies all there is in relation to intelligence. In the aura, a bright, clear yellow represents good mental capabilities. This color is very prominent in the halo region. An excess of this color denotes people who spend almost all their time after mental pursuits. These people have very quick minds. They are able to realize their mental capabilities. They have a desire to help other people through the products of their mental abilities. They do tend to be shy and slightly introverted. They control their anger easily. They are the concrete thinker. They deal in hard physical realities. This is a good color for scientists and professors. If the colors are of a softer, paler shades, then this is good for the writer, artist, and all creative workers. Diffused yellow, in the aura, indicates people who are tactful, cheerful, and use discrimination in all they do. They do not worry about mundane things. They are generally happy, friendly, and helpful to others. If the yellow is muddy, mustard yellow it shows craftiness. A grayish cast to the yellow shows mental cunning. A greenish yellow aura it indicates jealousy. Pinkish yellow shows astuteness in people. A dingy yellow shows cowardice and reddish yellow shows mental, moral, and physical timidity. Yellow induced into the physical body leads to the regeneration of the human cells keeping the body in beauty and health. Yellow effects the Astral Body by inducing a state of emotional well-being. It further helps the mental capabilities by sharpening them and improving the memory. It will make the mind quicker and able to more easily assimilate new material. Yellow qualities help to produce the next color.

Green is the color of Earth. It is the garment that clothes the Goddess/God of Earth. This is the color which symbolizes balance, harmony, and abundance. In the Night World, this is the

color of balance and harmony. In the physical world, it is the color of success and prosperity. If this color is a pure, emerald green, with just a touch of blue, it is the color of healing. This color can be found in the aura of doctors and nurses. Green is also found in the auras of teachers. Green in the aura generally indicates people of peace and harmony. They are the good neighbor and active in all community projects. They are people who have a strong inner faith in themselves and humankind. It is a color representing generosity and sympathy towards all of humankind. If there is a light green present it shows prosperity and success. A middle green denotes adaptability and versatility. An excess of green indicates people who are very individualistic and independent. Clear green denotes sympathy and dark green indicates deceit. Olive green shows treachery and a double nature. Next we have blue.

Blue is the color of the Sky World. This is the color denoting peace and calm. In the aura, the deeper the shade of blue the deeper the nature of the individual. Blue is a good color regardless of its darkness. Pale blue is an indication of people who are trying to grow emotionally. They may be struggling with who they are and what they should do in life. As the blue deepens so does their emotional maturity. They are closer to knowing who they are. They are closer to seeing the true purpose of their life. They are people who are more dedicated and work harder in life. The deep shades of blue indicate people who have found their quest.

They are people actively involved in their quest. They know their purpose in life and actively seek to complete it. They are totally immersed in the magickal quest. People with blue predominate in their auras are generally very calm individuals. They seek the contemplative life and friends of like nature. They are not akin to the social set. They can be very temperamental when their calm is disrupted. They are easy people to get along with and are very thoughtful. They are sensitive people towards their surroundings and other people. They enjoy times of intimacy with close friends and love the quiet and solitude. In the aura, a deep and clear blue indicates one of pure magickal devotion. A pale and ethereal blue shows devotion to a noble idea. A bright blue shows one given to loyalty and sincerity. The sixth color is indigo.

Indigo is the color of the true seeker on the magickal path. They are one dedicated to the magickal quest and only the magickal quest. People with indigo predominate in their aura are the ones who aim at the stars and succeed for they combine the ideal with the practical. They have developed a magickal maturity which will carry them unto their ultimate goal; the goal of Night Consciousness. The final color to study is violet. Violet is the highest vibration of color that can be seen in the aura. The souls who have this color in predominance are very rare indeed. They are supersensitive and will hold to their ideals even at the cost of personal suffering. All the great works of art owe their realization to the souls who have this color in their aura. Violet is the stimulator of ideals and provides nourishment for the brain cells in the upper brain which gives greater magickal understanding. They are people of a mature, well-rounded personality. They are strong in character with sound judgement in all things. They have excellent mental abilities and strong reasoning capabilities. They have the highest sense of personal integrity. People are strongly attracted to them. They are introspective and temperamental. They can be easily irritated because of their sensitivity. They enjoy the refinements of life, but can easily forego these and endure the most austere of lives, if it will serve their purpose in attaining their goals. So far, I have said a great deal about the colors of the aura itself. This won't help you, if you can't see them.

To be able to see the aura you will need to go back to the topic on seeing the Etheric (Topic 17). If you have been studying and practicing seeing the etheric, then you will soon be able to see the Astral aura. The aura is not easy to see. The colors in the aura are of a much higher vibration than the energies of the Etheric, and this requires that you have greater development of the Night Eye. It requires that you do not become impatient and give up. The lower colors, those from red to yellow, will be the easiest to see. The higher colors may elude you for some time. Do not forget that you can also see thought images or in other words pictures projected onto the auric screen. The procedures for seeing the Astral aura are identical for seeing the Etheric. It is best to begin with a period of meditation before trying to see the aura so that you will be in the highest of magickal states and awareness. All of this will take time and practice on your part but the effort is well worth it. You will help your magickal development and learn more about people. You will come to know people for what they truly are inside when you can see their auras. The second exercise involves strengthening the aura.

To strengthen the aura, you must first cross your wrists and your ankles. This will complete your bodily circuit and prevent your energies from being dissipated. You must also slow down and deepen your breathing. A few minutes of Night Breathing would be excellent. You should then see added energy flowing down your silver cord, from your Oversoul, adding tremendous Power to your aura. This will aid you when dealing with others who try to exert their own aura

against you. This often takes place between people in business who are negotiating a contract between themselves. It will also aid you in trying to see someone else's aura along with your own. If you are trying to view another person's aura, and they are practicing with you, have them do this too. You will find you can see it much easier and more clearly. The progression of the colors from red to violet marks the road of a Night Magician's journey.

You must develop the highest qualities and characteristics of each color. Ultimately, you must master each. Through mastery of the qualities embodied in the colors and their energy added to your aura, you will see yourself progressing towards Night Consciousness. As you learn to see your aura, you can identify the colors and the character they represent. If they are not of the highest standard then you can work for their improvement. Again, strive to achieve mastery over self. Embody within yourself the highest qualities of the colors. The next subject is intricately related to auras and colors. It is the Higher Night Centers.

#### 24. The Higher Night Centers and Exercises

In topic seventeen, you looked at the purely physical aspects of the Night Centers. Here, you are going to examine the magickal aspects of all seven. You will discover the powers that will become yours to use as each Night Center begins to function within you. You will see how colors are related to each Night Center and learn an important exercise to help advance the opening of the Night Centers. Finally, you will examine and perform an exercise that will release the Night Energy through the Night Centers into your world.

First, let's have a quick review of what you learned in topic seventeen. You were able to locate the Night Centers in relation to the physical organs. The first and lowest was located at the base of the spine in relation to the gonads. The second was located over the spleen/pancreas and the third over the navel area or solar plexus. The fourth is located at the heart level. The fifth at the throat. The sixth at the brow level and the seventh at the crown of the head. The Etheric Centers have a role in your life which extends beyond the physical plane and your physical bodies. You saw that the centers are for the purpose of keeping all planes in communication with each other. As you grow magickally, the Night Centers begin to unfold more and release their energies into your life. As these centers unfold, you become aware of the higher things on those realms. As you develop magickally, all Night Centers on all realms evolve and receive continually higher energies which pour into your lives. This releases abilities and powers into your life not normally present in the lesser evolved. What are the abilities and powers of each awakening Night Center, and what do they mean to you?

Let me begin by saying, "DO NOT FORCE YOUR DEVELOPMENT!" As you proceed in this topic, I will cover the powers which will awaken in you as you develop magickally and the Night Centers begin to open. In the unevolved, only the minimum of energy flows through the Night Centers to the physical body so that there is life. But as you develop magickally, the centers evolve and the Oversoul is able to send more of Its Energies through you. As long as you develop along magickal lines, the Oversoul will send ever greater Energies through you. But do not practice any form of Night Meditation, or Yoga, or whatever, which will force the development of the base Night Center. This is the seat of the Earth Fire. In the eastern languages, it is referred to as the Kundalini. The Earth Fire is Life. It is the Energies of Life itself. This Energy lies in the base Night Center of all planes. It is a powerful and special Energy which when released, will surge upward through the Night Centers and awaken each of them to their fullest extent. Only if you are fully and magickally developed and have special guidance from a magickal teacher of the Higher Realms will you survive such a forced awakening. For example, the Earth Fire, on its way up, could very easily tear through tissue and destroy various organs and cause physical death. This is the least that could happen! The second Night Center is concerned in its undeveloped state with sensual gratification, sexual desires, and reproduction. If the Fire is unleashed while the Night Center is magickally undeveloped, then all the bad traits of this center will be extremely heightened which could result in uncontrollable, depraved, sexual conduct and harm to others. This forced awakening could cause insanity. Allow the Earth Fire to awaken inside of you, naturally, as the result of your magickal development. Grow magickally and the base Night Center will awaken in you, as you are ready to handle the power that is contained within it. You will be shown how to unfold the upper Night Centers but allow the base center to unfold of itself. It will awaken naturally and easily as you unfold magickally. When this base Night Center has fully awakened, you will become the Oversoul. You will be a Night Magician of the highest degree. In the beginning of your development, this center will glow with a reddish light. When you have achieved Night Consciousness it will glow with an intense dark light of incredible power. The second Night Center relates to your passions. The deeper your passions are and involvement in lust and sexual gratification the darker the red of this center's light. As you develop magickally, a dark light begins to be added to the red till the center is all aglow in the

Night. In its highest development, this Night Center will allow one to overcome disease, old age, and eventually physical death. This is a great center of vitality. It absorbs the orange light and distributes the energies throughout one's being. As this Night Center begins to awaken, you will be able to remember journeys taken into the Astral Realm at night. Upon awakening in the morning, you will begin to have vague recollections of what they did in the Astral that night as their body slept. You will probably have the feeling of flying while in the Astral Realm.

The third Night Center as it awakens will give you the feeling of an awareness of Astral presences. You will become very conscious and sensitive to all manner of psychic and Astral influences. Some of these influences may feel good, while others may induce in you a sense of fear. On the lowest levels, this center is associated with power, mastery, and ego control. This is the center for engrossment in material matters and their control. On the highest levels, this center will be able to help you achieve strong magickal rapport with your fellow Astral brothers. This center is used to contact Astral entities. This Night Center should be surrounded in the Night Pillar such that the contact remains a contact and does not allow the Astral entities control over your bodily mechanism.

The next Night Center is the crossroad for all centers. This is the fourth Night Center and it is located over the heart. As this center begins to open on the etheric level, you will begin to have an emotional rapport with others. You will be able to know and feel the emotions of others around you. You will have empathy with them on all levels of feeling, to include that of feeling their pains as your pains. Located within this Night Center is the "Heart of the Oversoul". This is the anchor within your magickal being placed there by your Oversoul. It is around this miniature dark star that all that you are is gathered. You can liken it to a small miniature Oversoul. It is the embryo of your Oversoul beginning. As you begin on the path of Night Magick and continue to grow magickally, you will see this embryo begin to grow into a small child of the Oversoul. The farther along you develop, the child will continue to develop and grow, until you gain Night Consciousness and the Oversoul within you is a full adult. This center actually does exist and can be seen in meditation. You will learn to do this in a later topic. It is the focal point in your world where you, as a Night Magician, can go and meet your Oversoul. In this center's fullest development, the Power of your Oversoul will pour out from you. Through the Energy pouring out of you there will be nothing you cannot do. This is the Center of the Night in which you move and have your being.

Through the fifth Night Center, you gain the ability for clairaudience. Clairaudience is the ability to hear voices in the Astral Realm. You will have the sensation of hearing those on the other side, as you can hear those on this side of life. You may also be able to hear the "Music of the Night Spheres". As this center continues to develop, you will be able to clothe your thoughts in form. The thoughts you generate with your mind, through this center, will be able to take on direction and energy and go forth and do as directed. Through the development of this center, you will achieve strong will power which will see you through difficult tasks. Through this center, you will achieve true mastery over yourself and life. This is only, though, when you link up this center with that of the heart. Together, these centers in unison can do anything. In Night Magick, the sixth center is the Night Eye. As this center begins to develop, you first perceive Astral shadows. You will often see nothing more than clouds of color. As the Night Eye continues to develop, you will be able to see Astral people, landscape, and symbols. When the Night Eye is fully developed, you will be able to have true seeing which you call clairvoyance. Clairvoyance is the ability to see and know Truth in all its forms. It is seeing and knowing as the Oversoul within you sees and knows. You will be able to see the past and present. You will be able to see anyplace at anytime and be able to enlarge, in the physical world, matter ranging in size from small to microscopic. In the future, you will be able to see the probabilities of what might happen. In the future, there is little which must happen, and a great deal which can change according to your actions. Thus, according to the way things seem to be forming you can see what will probably happen.

The seventh center is the link between your mind and that of your Oversoul. In the beginning, as this center begins to open, it allows for partial consciousness when you are in the Astral world. As this center unfolds, your consciousness will be more complete, and you will perceive the Astral Realm as clearly as you do the physical world. You will never know any cessation of consciousness whether you are in the physical world or the Astral world. As you grow more and more dedicated to doing the Soul's Will this Night Center will continue to open on Higher Realms allowing more and more Magickal Energy to be released into your everyday world. You will become more in tune with what your Higher Self would have you do in this world. When this center has developed far enough, in conjunction with the heart Night Center, the Oversoul Child will be born within you. When this Night Center has opened completely, your aura and

your word will be filled with Night Energies and the aura will glow with a brilliant radiance of the Night. From what has just been said, there can be seen a relationship between the Night Centers and colors.

Each Night Center, in its pure and developed state, vibrates to a particular color. The base Night Center vibrates to the color red. The spleen/pancreas center vibrates to the color orange. The third center, located over the solar plexus, vibrates to the color yellow. The heart center vibrates to the color green and the throat center to that of blue. The brow center, Night Eye, vibrates to that of indigo, and the highest of Night Centers, the crown, vibrates to the color violet. As all the Night Centers are developing magickally, they will attain to the purest of colors. As the Night Centers reach perfection, they will open, and the colors will flow till they can be perceived as the color of the Night. Let's look at an exercise which can be done to develop the Night Centers so that they will radiate in the Night and permit your the Night Powers to flow through you.

First, refer back to topic sixteen. In that topic, we discussed meditating on the desired color you needed for healing and projecting it into your Night Pillar. You prepared yourself for meditation with a sheet of color paper, which would help you concentrate, and draw to you, the desired color energy that you wished to use. Let's again do the same technique, only this time, instead of sending the color into your Pillar, you will send it into the specific Night Center you wish to stimulate.

You should first see the specific Night Center, in your mind, and feel that great wheel of Night Energy slowly rotating, and see the specific color desired flowing into the Night Center and stimulating it. See the center whirling faster and faster as the result of the inflow of color energy. See the center becoming a pure channel for the color energy and the impure energies leaving it. Further, see the added Energies of the Oversoul flowing into the center via the silver cord. Do this with all of the Night Centers except the base Night center. This is an excellent exercise will actually bring the Night Energies from the Higher Realms and then release them into the physical world around you. Stand with your feet together, and your arms and hands outstretched, as you form a living X. Palms should be facing outward. Now you must become very calm and silent within. See yourself as the Oversoul on Earth. See yourself as a Night Being. Now, you will bring into your being Two Great Energies. Through the soles of your feet, you will see the Earth Energies rise up, and at the same time, you will be drawing into you the Night Force flowing from your Oversoul down through the Crown Night Center. These Energies will meet in the heart Night Center. As they meet, see these Energies going out, under the direction of your Oversoul and the Night Gods, healing, cleansing, purifying, and touching the Earth. If you know someone in special need of the Energies, see them flowing to her or him. As you continue to practice this exercise the flow of the Energies will become stronger and stronger. You will be of true service to the Night Guild. You will truly be a Night Magician when the Night Centers radiate in the night of your world. I said earlier, that as the Crown Night Center begins to open, you have partial awareness of the Astral Realm. Yet, your awareness is often distorted. One state of awareness that you have of your Astral journeys is the dream state. In our next discussion, you will enter the Dream Realm.

## 25. The Dream Realm

There are a great many books on the market dealing with the topic of dreams. Many of these books list the symbols which you see in your dreams and then tell you what they mean, or what is going to happen because of what you dreamed. But interpreting dreams is just not that easy. Dreams are a very personal thing to each of us. A dog, seen in one dream, may mean one thing to me and a totally different thing to you.

To begin with, there are two basic types of dreams. The first type of dream is a common occurrence in most people's lives. This is the dream when upon awakening you have only vague recollections of what transpired. These are dreams which you rapidly forget what took place. They are very confusing dreams and are the mental garbage which your mind gets rid of as you sleep. The second type of dream is what you need to pay attention to.

These are dreams which you remember very vividly upon awakening. You see images, and possibly colors, vividly. You feel that you were actually there and taking part in what was going on. You have a sharp recollection of what took place and you do not easily forget what transpired after awakening. If this is the kind of dream that has occurred in your life, then you are remembering an actual experience that has taken place in the Astral Realm. You can also be witnessing a message that is meant to help guide your life. The first type of dream you can forget about. This is just your mind getting rid of a lot of mental garbage and worries pressed upon it, or a distortion of a journey in the Astral Realm. The second type is important. You have often heard of the phrase, "sleep on it", in connection with solving a problem that you cannot seem to resolve.

When you sleep on a problem, you are out in the Astral Realm and can meet with people on that side of life and receive an answer to your problem. The answer generally comes to you in the form of a dream. There are other things that can be done in the use of your dreams.

Let's say that you have an important interview with a client coming up. The night before, you will need a picture of your client that you're going to meet. Preferably, this should be a physical picture or a strong mental picture will suffice. Then before going to sleep, you should concentrate on the picture of your client and think of the thing you would like your client to do. Think and say the things to your client that will persuade her/him your way. Then put it out of your mind and just know, that as you sleep, you will meet your client in the Astral and this will help prepare your way in tomorrow's meeting. You will be successful if you do this. You can see that there are endless variations and possibilities in the use of your dreams. You can also help improve your dreaming. The first thing you should do in helping yourself in dreaming is find out which way you sleep best. The body best picks up magickal currents by having the head facing in a certain direction. Practice sleeping with your head pointed say to the North and keep a record on how you slept for a week. Then the next week, sleep in a new direction and do the recording. You should do this for all four directions. This is the first step towards better sleeping and dreaming.

To further improve dreaming do the following: when you fall asleep at night, say to yourself that you're going to remember all that you dream of clearly and sharply. Say this over and over to yourself until you fall asleep naturally. Know that you are going to dream true! Now, you will want to keep a diary of your dreams.

Keep this diary by your bed along with a pen. Upon awakening from a vivid and true dream, record what you saw and the impressions of what it meant to you. If the dream is in a very symbolic form, then take that dream into your meditation periods and seek to discover the meaning of those symbols. As said before, symbols are a very personal thing to you and their meaning lies with the Oversoul and Night Teacher. You may want to record these symbols on a three by five card and arrange them alphabetically. Symbolism is used a great deal of the time by your Oversoul for communication with you. Symbolism is used so that you will spend more time in communication with your Night Teacher and Oversoul in seeking an answer. Dreams are important. It is important for you to become familiar with your dreams and their meaning. Dreams are one means by which the Oversoul may speak with you and give important information to guide your life. This could be from warnings concerning your health or well-being to job assistance or ways to improve your practice of Night Magick. Another mode of communication is the Oracle, which we will discuss in the next topic, along with a discussion of Astral Guides and the use of Trance.

#### 26. Astral Guides, Oracleship, and Trance

You are never alone in this world. You may feel that you stand on some deserted island in the middle of the ocean, yet you should take comfort in the fact that all around you your Guides and Teachers are with you each and every moment of the day and night. In addition to discussing the Guides, you will also explore communication with the Astral Guides, or oracleship, and a special state of consciousness, the Trance. To begin with, let's take a close look at who your Guides and Teachers really are?

Your Guides and Teachers are actually two distinct groups of magickal helpers. The Guides are those who have remained on the Astral Realm and assist you from that dimension. They are composed of both relatives and friends of your past lives who are gaining valuable experience and magickal growth by assisting you on the physical plane. You should remember that their personalities are still very much akin to the ones they had in their last life. There are Specialist who come under this group of Guides. They assist you with special guidance if you are undertaking a special task and need their magickal expertise. They assist those in the process of transition from physical to Astral living. They are the Astral doctors and nurses. The other group is made up of those I term Teachers.

They are a magickally advanced group of Beings. They administer to you from a much higher realm of existence. The Realm of the Soul. They are usually with you from the beginning of time and follow you long into your magickal development. As you reach a special development in your magickal path, the rank of the Teacher continues to advance until you work with your Night Teacher. I will discuss the Night Teachers in a later topic.

Everyone on this planet has been led by inspiration at some time or another, but most have never taken the time to try and understand where that inspiration came from. Inspiration has its origins from two different sources. The first is your Oversoul and is of the highest form of inspiration. The second is guidance given to you through your Magickal Guides and Teachers. You can receive a closer rapport with your Guides and Teachers by learning to remain in a state of inner listening, by remaining in a state of inner awareness, knowing that they are always

with you and that you can receive from them guidance in all that you do.

You must begin by accepting their Presence and knowing that you can communicate with them. Whenever you can shut out the outer world and its problems, then can you hear them speak to you. You must always carefully weigh what they tell you and know that, ultimately, the decision is yours. They never compel you to do anything, but simply guide you as to what the probabilities are and then it's your decision. You may be able to hear the Astral message, but some are exceptionally good at hearing those from the Astral Realm. These individuals are Oracles.

An Oracle is a person who through a difference in body and brain structure is able to receive messages from the Astral with an exceptional clarity. They are individuals with a delicate physical and nervous system upon which Astral Spirits may impress the message. The person enters an altered state of consciousness, whereby the Guide or Teacher is able to impress upon the nervous system the message to be given. The Highest Guide or Teacher also acts as a traffic controller regulating which Guide or Teacher will give a message and who will not, through the Oracle. The Oracle must remain in a very passive state of mind. The Oracle is only a link between this world and that of the Astral. There are degrees of passivity in consciousness for the Oracle. The Oracle may retain almost total consciousness while seeing and hearing the message, and then again, consciousness may be totally repressed by the Guide or Teacher. This total repression of consciousness, in the Oracle, is known as Trance.

Trance is an altered state of consciousness, whereby the Oracle's consciousness leaves the body and that of a Higher Entity enters into it. Thus, the Higher Entity has free reign to speak and act through the body instrument without misinterpretation by the Oracle. In the other form of oracleship, the Oracle hears and interprets what s/he sees and in this case s/he does not.

Generally, for the Oracle in Trance, it seems as if s/he has been pleasantly sleeping. Depending on the Oracle's development, s/he can go into Trance on the physical plane and still remain conscious and active on the Astral plane, and so can control the type of entity who is giving the message through her/his body, to those on the physical plane who are listening. Even if the Oracle cannot remain awake in the Astral, there is nothing to fear. If her/his body, emotions, and thoughts are one with the Oversoul then nothing can happen to her/him while s/he is in a state of Trance. Here is a warning to those who would attempt to practice the state of Trance. If you are without fear and know that there is nothing to be afraid of, and live in the Night Pillar of the Oversoul, then no harm can befall you. Remember this, keep your thoughts at one with the Oversoul and nothing bad will ever happen to you. If you cannot live in this state of being then do not try to reach a state of Trance. Otherwise, you are subject to entry and hold by the lower mischievous entities. Most people have a safeguard against entering Trance and that is falling asleep, but entry and hold is still possible at just the point of falling asleep, and the point of awakening. This can only occur when you are attempting to reach the state of Trance. This cannot occur if you are just normally going to sleep. Have no fear, but live in the Oversoul and no wrong entry can occur to you during the state of Trance. There are several forms of Trance.

There is the kind, just mentioned above, whereby a Higher Entity uses your body to transmit a message to a group of listeners while the Oracle is in a soporific state. There is also what is called Night Trance.

Here the Oracle can be fully conscious and by his own control deliberately enter the state of Trance rather than it being induced by the possessing Higher Entity. The next kind is called Magician's Trance.

Here, the body is very rigid, even to the point of having hard skin. You are still in your body, but what you see can be likened to sitting on the highest peak with a telescope. In other words wherever you look, you can see what is transpiring. There is no limit as to where or what you can see. Time, distance, and/or physical structures are no obstacles to your seeing. The final kind is called Trance Projection.

Here you leave the body. The flesh remains very limp and the breathing greatly reduced. The heart rate is also greatly reduced. Again, there are no limits to where you can see. Everyone, to one degree or another can receive messages from the Astral. It is important that everyone learn to take time to know and become close to their Guides and Teachers. Their messages of guidance and help can completely change the world that you live in. There is no limit to the aid that they can provide in your world. Take the time to still the mind and body so that you may hear the guidance that they have to offer you. It is not essential that you try the states of Trance. You should only induce the state of Trance under the guidance of your Magickal Teacher. Therefore, I have omitted the how-to instruction for the state of Trance. You should not try the different states of Trance unless you are sure of what you're doing and that you're entering them with the correct frame of mind and under the proper supervision. Above all

learn this, "To be still and know the Oversoul." This is the key to Night Magick and Night Consciousness. We have been discussing the magickal influence of your Astral Guides and Teachers. Yet, they are only one magickal source, out of many, that influence your life. Another great source of magickal influence over your emotional and magickal life is the Goddess Diana. She is better known to you as the Presence of the Moon.

#### 27. The Moon and Its Rites

There are many roads of magickal evolution which are filled with excitement, adventure, accomplishment, and success by those who travel them. One of these roads is serving as the indwelling life force for souls within a moon, planet, or star. The stars, planets, and moons are the physical bodies of Great Beings who are on far on the road of magickal evolution. Of all these grand Bodies, the one most symbolic of this chapter on Water Magick is the Moon. The Moon of the Earth exerts great influence over the tides of the ocean. You can then extend the Moon's influence over the Tides of humankind's emotions. In this topic, you will examine this function and the magickal role that the Moon plays in your life. You will also study and perform special rites associated with the Moon. Let's begin by looking directly at the magickal role of the Moon.

You see the Moon because it is lit by the reflected light from the Sun. The Moon is a source of Yin Light for it takes the Light of the Sun and transforms it into Yin Light. This Energy is at a lesser extent, when the Moon is new, for it reflects lesser quantities of the transformed Energies. The Energies of the Moon can help directly in the process of your Oversoul's gaining control over your emotions. The Energies of the Moon passing through your Oversoul where in turn, they are purified and added to your aura, go on to strengthen and build emotional stability. The Energies of the Moon are very powerful and add great Magickal Force to your life when purified. The Oversoul, acting as a filter, filters out the impurities of the Moon's Energies caused by the grey energies that come from humankind. After filterization, you have the Moon's Pure Magickal Energies, and the Moon shines in the night as a Luminous Orb of Rarified Power. When your life and aura are illumined with the Yin Light of the Oversoul and is in turn magnified by the Moon, a great reflector, then is your Power in the Night multiplied to its maximum. You are likened to the Moon, when you, as a Night Magician, use your purified Night Consciousness to reflect the Yin Light of the Moon into the world. You are the Moon, a reflector of the Night Energies. The time of the New Moon is a time of new beginnings. It is a time when a Night Magician should consecrate and dedicate her/his aspirations and life anew unto her/his Oversoul. Thus you celebrate this time with a rite of new beginning. The rite unfolds as follows:

Make sure your Night Altar is ready except don't fill the chalice with any wine or grape juice. Putting on your Night Robe and arming yourself with your Night Weapons place the Night Pillar around yourself, the Night Altar, and the world. Put in your right hand the Night Wand; face the direction of North which symbolizes the element of Water; and now while making the sign of Night Magick, see fig.\_\_\_\_, say this solemn invocation to the First of the Four Great Beings of the Cosmic Elements: "I invoke the Great Powers of the Cosmic Being of the (insert direction) to flow into my being. Fill me with the Cosmic Power of (insert element). Renew me in the Power of Night Consciousness. Make me a Being of Cosmic Yin Light. Guide me upon the Road of Night Magick." Then face the Night Altar and place a little of the correct element from the vile into the chalice. The chalice is symbolic of you and the element representing the Cosmic Being. Then face the West and repeat the entire procedure inserting the correct direction and selecting the correct element to put into the chalice. Do this for all four directions. The correct elements and directions are as follows: water representing Water and North; oil representing Air and the West; salt is of the Earth and South; and fire(candle) that of Itself and East. Now pickup the candle; make the sign of Night Magick over the chalice; and if there is just you, then repeat an invocation of dedication of your life and being to the guidance and care of your Oversoul, Night Teacher, and Guides. After this, touch your first two fingers of your left hand in the substance of the chalice, and upon your heart make the sign of Night Magick and then repeat the Night Invocation on Earth as follows:

"Let the Earth be filled with the Presence of the Night. I honor the Presence of the Night in all I say and do. By the Night all things are given, by the Night all enemies removed. By the Yin Light of the Moon I shall walk the Night Road on Earth in power, and glory and victory forever. So be it."

After this you will need to hum for ten to thirty minutes. Although you probably know how to hum let me make sure. With your lips shut and together make the "mmmm" sound. Hum the sound such that eventually you'll feel a resonance building in your head. As you head begins to resonate, this resonance will spread over your body and you will begin to feel yourself vibrating and pulsating.

If there are others doing this with you, then select one to be the officiant. The officiant will do all that has been described so far, up to the point of saying the Night Invocation on Earth. Each member present will repeat a silent prayer of dedication to her/his life and being, and committing it to the guidance and care of her/his Oversoul, Night Teacher, and Guides. After this, the officiant will touch her/his first two fingers of her/his left hand in the substance of the chalice, and upon each member's heart s/he will make the sign of Night Magick and repeat the following: "With the substance of the Four Worlds and the Powers thereof, may you forever be guided on the Road of Night Magick and become a Night Magician." Then, repeat the Night Invocation on Earth, in unison. Everyone will then hum in unison till stopped by the officiant. This is the Rite of the New Moon. A time of joyous, beautiful renewal in Night Magick.

The next rite is in celebration of the Full Moon. The Full Moon marks the time of realization, attainment, and fulfillment. The consecration and deepening within of these aspects is celebrated in a very beautiful rite. If there is just you performing this rite, then you will need only one small candle on a plate. In addition, you will need two more small plates; one containing sage and the other holding your vessel of water. With these things in hand, you are now ready to begin.

Place these three things on your floor Night Altar, with the candle in the middle, the sage on the right, and the water on the left. Place them such that you will be seated facing the North with them in front of you. Then before being seated, take the candle in your right hand and with your left hand clear the four points of direction. You will begin with the East and move counterclockwise making the sign of Night Magick and repeating to each direction: "This way is the clear road to Night Magick bathed in the Yin Light of the Full Moon." Now be seated, repeat the Night Invocation of the Earth and enter into a deep silence and communion with your Oversoul and feel the achievement of knowing and being the Oversoul on Earth. Now take a small portion of the sage in your right hand and say, "This is the Spirit of the Night in form upon the Earth. It is the Essence of a Night Magician. Honor to the Night Spirit that I have achieved all that I AM". Place the sage around the candle. The candle should be lit from the beginning of the rite. Next pickup the water in your left hand and repeat "Water is the Night Spirit in pure Essence. It is the Power of the Spirit and Life on Earth. I AM the Waters of Life and the Night Soul on Earth." Pour the water around and on the sage. Now repeat, "the Night Soul united, One and forever, in Spirit, Power, and Life, within that which I am, a Night Magician. So be it". Close by humming the "mmmm" sound till you resonate deeply the sound. If there is more than one then use the following guidelines.

Everyone present will have the same plates and materials before them. Selecting one as officiant, s/he will clear the four points following the same procedures outlined earlier. S/he will stand in the center of the circle formed by all the celebrants and begin in the East. Then everyone should be seated. Hum together after seated. Continue all as the same in unison. The final rite requires nothing other than yourself. Be seated comfortably on the ground at eventide, or night, when the light of the Full Moon may fall upon you. Doing this on a cloudless night is best. Put the Night Pillar around yourself and all members participating. If there are more people doing this than just yourself, then all should face towards the Moon. Begin with Night Breathing for a few minutes. Then you will visualize, and all with you, the Light of the Full Moon passing through your Oversoul. Know that the Moon's Energy is being purified of all the Earth's human dross and is flowing now into your Astral Body and aura. See yourself filled with a most intense, pure Yin Light. This Light will give you emotional stability and inner strength. Do this, feeling the Night Soul's Presence being magnified within yourself. Know that you are the Oversoul.

You have learned from the Moon and its cycles, that it represents your beginning upon the path of Night Consciousness in its New Moon phase and ends with your fulfillment as the Night Soul in the Full Moon phase. Use carefully the Light of the Moon. The Light of the Moon must be purified by the Oversoul before it can be accepted into your world. Thus, you must always remain in Night Consciousness in order to reflect into your world only the Night Energies. The Moon is a very Advanced Being. The Moon is a great reflector of the Yin Light into your world during its night. The Goddess Diana is the Master of the Element Water on Earth. Now, you, too, will become Master of the Element Water in the next topic.

## 28. Water Rites

Water is representative of the Night Spirit. Water is Life and the Night Spirit. I will introduce two rites which embody the use of water. Water is a very powerful magnet and container for the Night Energies. Water will greatly intensify your drawing power of the Night Force. The first rite that I will teach is designed simply to aid your drawing upon, and concentrating the Night Force.

Begin by obtaining a glass bowl, similar to a mixing bowl, with a large open space at the top. The size you will need is based upon the number of people participating with you. You should have a bowl set aside for private use and one for group use. When you are not using the bowl keep it wrapped and in a place so that no one else will disturb it. You will also need three black candles, your Night Altar that is close to the floor, and a black cloth to cover the table. Setup the Night Altar so that you, or the officiant, when seated at the altar faces North. If there are others present then they should be seated around the altar. The Night Altar should be covered with the altar cloth. Fill the bowl full of water and place it in the center of the Night Altar. Finally, everyone will be seated, but the officiant who will light the three candles and place two of them on the outer edges of the group. Now that you have these things setup you are ready to begin.

Light the incense with the third candle; face West of the Night Altar; and with the lit, black candle in your right hand and while making the sign of Night Magick with the left hand repeat the following invocation: "Let only the Night Spirit remain here and only the Night Spirit go out. This room is protected in the Yin Light of the Oversoul. Let the Light of the Night Brethren enter here and only the Night Force remain. The first Night Guardian shall remain this way and only the Night Spirit's Power will stay. So be it". Now turn counterclockwise to the next major direction and repeat again this invocation. Each time preceding it with the sign of Night Magick. Do this again in the third major direction, and finally over the Night Altar itself. Then take your seat on the floor before the bowl and again surround yourself with the Night Pillar. Contact your Oversoul and begin to draw into yourself the Night Force. Then reach out and touch the bowl with both your hands, one on each side of the bowl. If this is being done as a group, then all will interlock fingers when hands are placed upon the bowl by all members present. All should see the Force flowing into themselves, and then into the bowl filling the bowl with the Night Force. Continue to do this as long as you, and the members with you, feel comfortable and can control the Force. If at anytime you should begin to feel uncomfortable, you should stop and again stand and clear all four corners of the room. Then rest a while before trying this again. This is a tremendous rite for collecting the Night Force in its most concentrated form. After the rite, it is suggested that you obtain clean drinking glasses (one for each member present) and dip them into the water of the bowl and drink of it. Drink as much water as you can comfortably hold. The water has a great healing and energizing effect and will ward off illness for a long time. It is further effective in aiding ailing plants and animals. The benefit of the Force, coursing through your body, is cause enough to do this as often as possible.

In the second rite, in addition to what you have setup, a mirror and two of the following color candles: violet, blue, green, yellow, red, and black. This is not a group rite but for you alone. Begin this rite the same way you did the first rite, by clearing the four points of the room. Setup the bowl of water and a mirror directly behind it. You will use four candles placed upon the Night Altar, one on each corner. The two closest to you will be black candles. The other two candles' colors depend upon what you are trying to accomplish. When this rite is properly setup and performed, you will be able to see your Guides and Teacher and to receive answers to questions you put before them. The color combination of the candles is very important.

If you wish to have questions answered by no one in particular, then a blue and red candle are used. Another strong color combination you can use is red and violet. To contact your Night Teacher, the color combination must match their personal harmony and frequency. There is a chart located in Appendix B which will give you the proper color combination for the various Night Teachers I speak of in this work. For those Night Teachers not listed or if you're not sure who yours is, then you can use the blue and red candle combination to find out and also their specific color combination to be used in this rite. Here is how to use this rite.

Be sure you have cleared the four points in the room and have surrounded yourself in the Night Pillar. Otherwise, you will attract the wrong force. Setup the bowl of water with the black candles in front and the other two in the rear, (make sure that the four candles can be seen in the mirror), and the mirror directly behind the bowl. Light the candles and you are ready to begin. Meditate upon your Teacher and Guides and upon the fixtures in front of you. Be sure to get comfortable, surround yourself in the Pillar of Protection, and relax with Night Breathing. Sit directly in front of the Night Altar, such that, you will see the top and surface of the water in the mirror. The reflection you should see in the mirror, is the surface of the water and the candles. The candles will form a figure 8. The faces of the Teacher, or Guides, will appear in the reflection of the water in the mirror, or just above the actual bowl. If at anytime you should start to lose the vibration, stand up and again clear the four points and begin at another time. Not only will the faces appear in the mirror but also images that will answer your questions. It is also possible that you will hear the voice of the Teacher from the image that appears. This is

very much akin to picture telephones. Your mind should be free of mental garbage and worries. You should also be in good overall health. If you seem to fail at first then you know that you are making true progress. As with anything, you must practice over and over again to achieve true results. If you do so, then you'll achieve the highest results. You have learned so much about the Astral Realm. But wouldn't it be great if you could go there and see it for yourself? Well if you're ready, just turn the page and you'll be on your way.

#### 29. Night Projection

Perhaps a more familiar term for what you are about to study is Astral Projection or traveling. The word "Astral" is derived from the Latin and Greek language which means "of the stars". You learned in the beginning of this chapter on Water Magick, that the Astral Body interpenetrates the physical body. Your consciousness resides in the physical body during the day and by night, when your physical body sleeps, your consciousness resides in the Astral Body. People don't remember what takes place during their Astral sojourns because they believe that this physical world is the only true reality, and so their mind rationalizes what they have seen in the Astral Realm into a distorted dream. But if you truly believe that the Astral Realm exists and that you can go there then you will remember what you have seen and done in the Astral Realm and remember it upon awakening. Yet, you can go beyond dreaming and actually travel there. You can bring back your experiences in the Astral Realm. You can do this by learning, consciously, to project yourself into the Astral Realm. This is Astral or Night Projection.

To begin with, in learning to Night Project consciously, you must learn to have no fear. Fear is the greatest destroyer of good results in this work. Fear will prevent you from accomplishing anything in Night Magick. So do not be afraid to Night Project. You can not get lost while you reside in the Astral Realm. The physical body is firmly attached to the Astral Body by the silver cord. No matter where you travel in the Astral Realm, whenever you wish to return to the physical body, simply think of yourself there, and you will do so. Why would you want to travel in the Astral, in the first place?

To begin with you could see how well you're doing so far in your sojourn on Earth. You can meet face-to-face with your Guides and Teacher and receive first hand instruction on how to solve certain problems. You can receive instruction on how to better your life and access the lessons you have learned so far. You can also travel anywhere on the Earth plane you wish to. You can see great libraries and be able to read the books contained therein. You could see museums and other places of interest. There is no limit to the things you can do while Night Projecting. But be warned if you try to go somewhere and invade another's privacy. You are liable to receive an "astral shock" and get slammed back into your body with a terrific headache. Although the person you visited may not be able to physically see you their subconscious will be able to do so and send a strong astral blow to your Astral Body. Its best if you don't go where you intuit you shouldn't go. Without fear and listening to your Oversoul for guidance you're ready to Night Project.

First, you should watch your diet before Night Projecting. Try to eat as little fried food as possible. Do not travel on a full stomach. You won't get anywhere if you are uncomfortable because your stomach is full and in the process of digestion. For about a week prior to actually projecting you should prepare yourself mentally by repeating the following invocation, four times daily. Do it once in the morning, noon, evening, and before going to bed. The invocation is, "On this day \_\_\_, I am going to Night Project. I am going to travel in the Astral Realm and remember all that I see and do. I will recall all of this after I have returned to my body. This I will do and won't fail." On the day you have selected to Night Project be sure and have as peaceful and quiet a day as possible. You must try and keep your mind on the subject of Night Projecting all that day. You must look forward to going to bed that night with the intentions of traveling in the Astral Realm. Now, you need to learn to relax before projecting.

Many will say this is easy for them to do, but actually this is not true. True relaxation is an art and must be practiced to be mastered. To begin Night Projection, you must be fully relaxed. There must not be a tense nerve or muscle in your entire body. When you lay down to project, the room must be just right, being neither too cold, or hot, if you are to achieve true relaxation. To assist relaxing and projecting, darken the room and secure it from entry by anyone else. In no way should there be any way that you can be disturbed. If you are touched, while traveling, this could cause harm to your physical body. Further, no one should attempt to try Night Projection if they are prone to heart trouble. This is not to scare anyone, but the body should be in good health. You should not cover yourself with heavy bedding for this will interfere with relaxation and projecting. If you're ready to relax, then let's begin.

Turn your consciousness upon your toes. Concentrate mentally on them and see them relaxing. See all the tension leaving the toes. Next, work on the foot and see all tension

leaving it. Do this all the way up one leg and then do it for the other leg. Do not go on till there is no tension or tightness in any part of your lower extremities. Then move on to the pelvic region and do the same relaxation technique. Then do the arms and each finger, individually, till you feel calm and relaxed. The stomach and chest region are next, then on up the neck and finally, the head region. Relax the jaw and forehead. Relax each part thoroughly before going to the next part. Once you have accomplished this, it is time to relax the mind.

In order to relax your mind, allow your thoughts to dwell on a beautiful day with billowy clouds in the sky. Take your thoughts and place them on one of those beautiful dark clouds. Just relax and drift on the cloud and let your mind forget all its worries. Think of nothing else but the deep sensation of peace and floating on the cloud. At this point your eyes should be closed. Relax your thoughts and for a few moments try to think of nothing. In Night Projection, you are where your thoughts are.

The Astral Body looks somewhat like your own physical body so picture it floating about three feet above you. You must know that you're actually floating above your physical body. Relax, do not force the process, do not strain or induce tenseness in the physical body, and above all, do not jerk. If your body jerks, then you will find that you will have to wait till the next night to try again. You will feel a floating sensation and a gentle sense of rising. This is great! If you don't jerk, then you will find that you will continue to float and rise, so carefully, open your eyes. You will have found that you have floated up and away from your physical body. If you want to view your room then you can do so by just thinking of doing so, but be careful. The experience is something akin to hearing your voice for the first time on the tape recorder. It will be quite a shock and you'll hardly believe it's your body. Some have become so startled that they have returned to their bodies with a shock. Do not be startled or afraid. Just relax as you float there and get used to the sensation of your new body. You will find that you are naked. If you will think of clothes, then you will be dressed, but remember to put that thought away in a corner of your mind in order to remain dressed. Slowly, "will" yourself to settle back to the floor. What will you do next?

For the first night, it is best that you go straight to the Astral Realm. All you need do is think of being there and you will do so. Wherever you want to be your thoughts will take you. If you will go to the Astral Realm first, and thereafter spend a little time in the Astral before doing other things on the Earth plane, you will never have trouble getting out of the physical body again. You will also receive a tremendous magickal recharge by visiting the Astral Realm. When you want to return simply think of your physical body and you will be there. Now, you must return slowly, and carefully, back into your body.

It is essential that you do this slowly. Have you ever had a dream where you felt yourself suddenly falling and woke up with a start. This is what happens when you return too fast into your physical body. It is essential to align the two bodies up correctly, or you will suffer from a headache. If this happens, simply fall back to sleep and when you awaken the alignment process will have occurred naturally and the headache will be gone. On reentry, you will feel as if you are returning to a very dense and cold body. It won't be the most comfortable experience in your life. But this shows you how much more crude and slower a rate of vibration the physical body really is. There, you have Night Projected. Let's examine another technique for projecting yourself out of your physical body.

Again relax fully and make sure that there are no rough edges disturbing your body and distracting you. Have your eyes closed and roll them up so that, in effect, you are looking somewhere up at the top of your forehead. Do not create eyestrain though. Breathe regularly, rhythmically, and deeply then forget all about your breathing. Turn your conscious awareness towards your third Night Center which is located over the solar plexus, or navel area. It is from this area that the Astral Body leaves the physical body. Visualize your Astral Body slowly starting to leave your physical body. Picture the third Night Center like a window through which the Astral is going to leave. See the Astral as a cloud-like figure, shaped similarly to the physical body, and slowly rising up and floating about six feet above the physical form. At this point any one of the following might happen: 1) again you might jerk and return to your body and so on another night you'll have to try again, 2) you'll feel a tingling or numbness in your physical body which is a good sign, but which you should ignore. From here, you will feel a rigidity or stiffness come over the body and you will not be able to move. DON'T PANIC! This is an excellent sign of progress. You will be able to see as if through your eyelids and the surroundings will be bathed in a soft light, if you remain calm, you will begin to feel a slight swaying and out you'll move into the Astral Realm. You will see things in very vivid colors and with remarkable clarity, 3) you may feel a swaying motion and then experience the feeling as if going through a dark tunnel, at the end of which is a bright light. At the end of the tunnel you will pass through a curtain of brilliant colored drops and then,

suddenly you will be in the Astral World. Night Projection is a very beautiful experience. Have no fear and you will have no problems. Don't be discouraged if, at first, you don't succeed. Nothing ever comes too easy in life but must be worked at with great patience and diligence. Never talk about your travels except to help others. Use it to grow magickally on the road of Night Magick. Remain always in the Shadow of your Night Teacher as you travel in the Greater Realms. You have come to the end of another chapter in Night Magick.

It was a chapter filled with the wonders of Water Magick and the Astral Realm. You have come to know the Realm, intimately, and even how to travel in it while still living in a physical body. You have explored the secret uses of water. You have learned secrets about your physical and Astral bodies and the inner power contained within them. You can look at others now and know their thoughts and emotions by the use of your Night Eye. You have met the Goddess Diane and perhaps most importantly, you have come to know that you are never alone in this world. That your love ones and friends are just in the next Realm always waiting to help you if you will let them. Yet, for the moment, you must leave the beauty of the Astral Realm and the lore of Water Magick and enter into a higher and even more exciting phase of Night Magick. This is the Mental Realm and the lore of Air Magick.

## CHAPTER VI

### AIR MAGICK

#### 30. The Mental Realm

As you travel on the road of Night Magick and endeavor to become a Night Magician, you first had to gain some mastery over your physical and emotional selves. This is a long process and may take many lives to accomplish. But as you begin to achieve that mastery, you will continue down the road towards Night Consciousness. Now you will travel the third portion of the road towards self-mastery. You enter the Realm of Mind.

As you found with the Astral Realm, the Mental Realm is composed of varying levels of vibration. It would be wise to examine, in brief, these different vibrations and their interrelationship. Let's begin with the highest realm and work our way down to the lowest level.

The Void is the highest level that can be reached. It is the level where we are all united in Mind as One. Here, all are One. This is the level of knowing. Here, you do not think for all is known. Here all ideas exist, all things are known, and you as the Spirit are the Knower. This is the level of Pure Mind, the Void Mind, the sum of all. This mind essence interpenetrates all and is accessible to all who are in vibration with it. This is the ultimate level all must someday reach. You must be the Knower. The Godsoul Mind is the next level.

This is the level of original mind. Here all minds are as one yet there is individuality. This is the level of highest individual mind. Here is the origin of the archetypes of mind. The Oversoul Mind is the next level.

This is the level of the Higher Mind. From out of the Godsoul Mind, ideas that exist become manifest in this world. Here, you find all joined in the Oversoul Mind. There is Oneness in thought and consciousness. The Oversoul Thought first creates, using the ideas drawn from the Godsoul Mind and the mind substance of the Oversoul Realm. Here, you are the Oversoul in Thought and Action, the Creator. Now you enter the physical world of thought and mind.

You may believe you know this world. Actually, your thoughts and consciousness are much more than you realize. You will remember that your emotions were tied into your emotional or Astral Body. Your thoughts and consciousness are the same and make up the Mental Body. It is through your Mental Body that you think and have consciousness on the physical plane. But in order for the physical body to be tied into this Mental Body, there must be a physical link and this is the brain. Many believe that it is the brain that actually does the thinking, but the brain is actually a receiving station. It takes the Mental energies sent to it, by the Mental Body, and translates it into action in the physical body. Your brain is attuned to the wavelength of your Mental Body. Your brain and Mental Body produces an electromagnetic current through its activities, and thus, also produces a Mental Aura which is akin to your Astral Aura. To see these energies, you would have to develop your Night Eye to a greater degree than you had when you saw the Astral energies. I discussed earlier how the Oversoul is directly linked to the physical body via the silver cord into the heart region. The silver cord is also directly linked to the brain region. Thus your thoughts are always monitored and acted upon by your Oversoul. Your Oversoul in order to experience the physical world must build-up physical counterparts to its Magickal Being.

So in the beginning of the Oversoul's physical sojourn, the mind substance of the Mental Body is undeveloped. But as time in this world and the others passes, the physical mind develops and slowly becomes refined. Life after life, you come to this plane trying to develop your physical consciousness into one with your Oversoul consciousness. Although the Oversoul can

influence the Mental Body if the Mental Body does not listen then there is little that the Oversoul can do. The majority of the world does not listen to the Oversoul. Therefore the Oversoul withdraws into its own realm and remains there until the Lower Mind calls upon it for assistance and tries to listen and follow its will. This is what you are trying to do. So, as you move farther into this chapter on Air Magick, you will encounter exercises, rites, and the use of your Night Magician's Tools and Weapons, in order to develop your mind. You will take your mind through the tests of self-mastery in order to become a Night Magician. Your first rite in Air Magick will give you the link between the air and your mind.

### 31. Air Rite

The Ancient Ones compared the element of air to that of the mind. The Ancient Mysteries, likewise, showed that the mental faculties could be compared to the aerial regions. It is my intention to introduce a rite that will greatly benefit the mind and its faculties. The rite puts together two elements: your mind and the air. I will show you how your mental powers can be enhanced through a special form of breathing.

You will remember in the topic on Night Breathing that it was through very deep breathing that your health could be improved and for many, breathing is very shallow. In the Air Rite, you are going to use deep breathing but it is going to be based on a particular breathing rate. Instead of just breathing in and out rhythmically, you will breathe in and hold the breath for so long, and then breathe out and then, again, hold your breath. Great benefit can be derived by such. Before you begin, I want to make it clear that this is serious business and not a game. Please, DO NOT deviate from the set pattern that is about to be described. To do so can be very hazardous to your health.

To begin with, you must sit or lie down so that you are very comfortable. Then, you want to become very relaxed and reduce all the tenseness possible in your body. Then, you will need to cross your ankles and wrists to build-up the energy from your breathing. If you have done all of this, then you are ready to begin with the breathing. To start with, you will do three complete deep breathing exercises. If you have forgotten how, then here is a quick review. Inhale as deep a breath as possible pushing the diaphragm out as far as possible. When you feel you have taken in all the air possible, take in just a bit more air. Then exhale the air very steadily and completely bringing in the diaphragm and abdomen as far as possible. You want to really empty your lungs. After you have done this, you are ready to do the timed breathing. Timed breathing means you are going to breathe in for so many seconds, then hold your breath for so many seconds, then exhale so many seconds, and again hold your breath for so many seconds. In the Air Rite, you are going to begin by inhaling for five seconds, hold your breath for ten seconds, exhale for ten seconds, and hold your breath for seven to ten seconds. You are going to repeat the entire process ten times. There are certain precautions you must take in doing this rite.

You must not do it if you are in poor health. You must stop doing it if for any reason you are feeling dizzy or light headed. If you persist in doing it past these warning signals then you are likely to pass out. You must not strain yourself in doing this rite. There should be absolutely no force on your part to maintain the pattern of breathing. If there is, then you need to reduce the number of seconds that you hold your breath. If you do the rite correctly then the benefits are tremendous.

You will find that your mental health will be tremendous. You will feel relieved of all tension and mental strain. You will feel extra charged with new mental power. This is an excellent rite to use before and after any of the mental exercises in Air Magick. If you need added mental power for long periods of study or for increased memory then this rite will greatly increase both. If your world is filled with mental demands, then this rite is best practiced several times a day. It is especially good to use it when you feel the least mentally drained. You can see that there is a very close relationship to the air you breathe and your mental faculties. It is all based on the right use of your breathing patterns. You should remember to be relaxed and not to strain when you use the Air Rite. Further, you must not play around with different patterns of timed breathing if you don't want to hurt yourself. You should always use this rite to the benefit of your good health. By now, you should be mentally charged up and ready to explore the power of your mind.

### 32. Power of Thought

As the title suggests, there is power in your thoughts. You probably have never thought of your thoughts as containing any kind of power but they do. Much of Mental Magick requires your understanding of the Mental Realm and how to increase the powers of your mind. Here I will discuss briefly the Mental Realm and begin your development of a more powerful Mental Body. When you die to the physical plane you move first to the Astral Realm. After reviewing your past life and lives, you then receive guidance as to what to do next. If you are of a higher

vibration then that of the Astral Realm, then you may leave, or die to, the Astral and go on to the Mental Realm. It is here in the Mental Realm that all ideas are first brought forth in created form. It is a world of thought and creation through thought. The great creations, inventions, social ideas, and art that are in the world today were originally created in this mind world and released into the physical world. Here, in the physical world, a receptive individual is able to tune into these thought patterns and create from them on the physical level. Thought creation is the work of the Great Beings who live upon this Mental World. They create in thought great things that will enhance the physical world. This leads to your relationship with the Mental World.

There was some very significant information in that last paragraph that you can carry over into your world here in the physical, in regards to thought power. The Beings who live in the Mental Realm first perceive the idea, then they picture the idea, and then they give the idea form and send it into the physical world. You do the very same thing all the time, but without very much effort or concentration. You often get an idea of something that you want, but that's usually where it all ends. You may think about it once in a while and hope you will get it, but only sporadically. If you look at the Mental Realm around you and examine its properties and how it works, then you will see why thoughts can have power.

In this material world of ours, if you want to create something you must use some physical means to do so. This means is usually by way of your hands. In the Mental Realm, your material, so to speak, that you create with is the etherial Mental energies. The tool with which you create with is your thought. By applying a strong, concentrated, and continuous thought directed at the Mental energies, you can create a Thought Form. That is, your thoughts take on a form imbued with the qualities of your thoughts. If you continue to add more thought power to this form, it will eventually materialize into your material world. Whatever the thought is programmed to do, it will happen here on Earth. So if you wanted a forty foot yacht, then that is what would eventually come into your possession. If the thought was that of a specific healing for someone, then the thought would go forth and heal. Now, before you go and rush off and start wishing for this and that, let's look at a few more facts.

You just can't sit down and start wishing. You do that all the time. There is a certain way that this must be done. Next, you must build-up your powers of observation, concentration, memory, and visualization. The meditation that you have been doing, hopefully all along, is important too. In topic forty, you will learn how to create through thought. It may seem that you are a long way from getting to topic forty, but please don't jump the topics in between this one and forty. You will, first, have to develop those powers of the mind, through the exercises that follow shortly. The exercises must be practiced faithfully, and for as long as it takes to master them. Further, each topic that follows, up to number forty, will further enhance your mental abilities and prepare you for topic forty. Now, let's get to those exercises.

**Exercise #1, Observation.** There aren't too many who can at the end of the day recall what they did step-by-step. Yet, this is part of your observation training. In the evening, sit down and recall the day the best that you can. At first, this may not be as easy as it sounds. Then, take this one stage further, and at the end of the week, say on Saturday, again sit down and recall the entire week in as much detail as possible. Visualize, or picture, the people you met, things that you did, and things said. Another observation exercise you can do is to enter a room quickly and, for say thirty seconds, look around the room and then shut your eyes and recall as many objects as possible. You can do this in the outdoors, too. For example, while walking down the sidewalk, or in the park, observe what's around you and then stop and close your eyes and recall all the details of your surroundings that you have just passed. If you will study these examples, then perhaps you can go on to create more observation exercise for yourself.

**Exercise #2, Concentration.** To begin with, do some mental arithmetic. On your mental blackboard, begin by adding a row of numbers. Write down the numbers on a sheet of paper and then close your eyes and see those numbers on your board. Then, add them mentally, and when you have the answer write it down and then do it on paper. Next, multiply some numbers and, also, do some division. At first, you will be able to use only simple numbers, but as your concentration develops, you will be able to do more and more complicated problems. Another concentration exercise you might use is to concentrate on NOT thinking. That's right! You are going to get very quiet in your Magician's Study, with the curtains drawn, and you are going to picture your mental blackboard and you are going to keep it blank. You are going to cease thinking of anything. Concentrate on doing this. It is not easy, for thoughts will do their best to creep in, but you must concentrate and not permit them to do so. Do this for about ten minutes to begin with, and then gradually lengthen the time per sitting.

**Exercise #3, Memory.** Begin by picking your favorite passage from a book or poet and selecting five or six lines from it. Then memorize them. Constantly create new memory games

that will exercise your power of memory. Acquire a booklet that gives you some material to study, and provides you with a test that will see just how much you have been able to retain of the material. Make a list of ten people, places, or things and then recall them forward and backward. Gradually increase the number of items on your list.

Exercise #4, Visualization. A phrase that you might select to mean the same as the word visualization is, "to picture with the mind's eye". You are going to create an image of something in your mind. Begin this exercise by thinking of someone you know and then picturing what that person looks like. Get this image in your mind's eye so real, that it seems to be right there in front of you. An aid that you might use is to get a photograph of the person and then study it for a minute and then do your visualization. Next, you might try, while walking down the sidewalk and coming towards someone, to study their face carefully and after they have passed you, recall their face in your mind's eye. Don't just use people as subjects. If you can think of objects, or animals, that will be great, too. But when you visualize these people, or whatever you choose, see them in clear detail and always in color. These are the four exercises that will set your feet definitely on the path of acquiring mastery over your mind. In all these exercises do them no more than about fifteen minutes each. You should do them all, at least, once a day. You might want to separate them, doing some exercises during the day and others when you are at home at night. Continue to practice these exercises for the rest of your sojourn here on Earth.

Practice these with patience and determination and you will gain mental mastery. You will be on your way to being able to have great success with creative visualization. An important part of the Mental Realm involves the Silent Magician who you'll meet next.

### 33. Your Silent Magician

You have just come from looking at your Mental Body and knowing that it is your physical consciousness. But actually, your Mental Body is much, much more. Your Mental Body also contains that part of your consciousness which is called the Subconscious Mind. How much of your consciousness is composed of the Subconscious? Would you believe, almost all of it? That's right! You actually use only a very small fraction of your total mental capacity. What about geniuses, you ask? They only use a part of a fraction more than do the rest of us. To get some idea of how small your mental capacity is, in relation to the whole, let's first imagine a fifty-five gallon drum.

It's empty right now, but if you were going to fill it with water, representing your physical consciousness, how much water would it take? Well, believe it or not, it would take only about five gallons. The rest of the space comprises your Subconscious Mind. As you can see, your Subconscious is a mental giant. Just imagine what would happen if you could tap into this great source of mental power. You are going to learn to do this in just a little while. But first, you must become more familiar with the Subconscious Mind and the role it plays in your life. You could actually name the Subconscious Mind, your "Silent Witness". For indeed, that is what your Subconscious does. It witnesses all that you do. It is able to remember all that you have ever done in this lifetime and what's more, it contains the memories from all your lives here on Earth and sojourns in the otherworlds. Why can't you remember them then?

This is because there is an energy screen between yourself and the Subconscious. This screen is there for several reasons. First, this screen prevents you from tampering with the Subconscious Mind. For most people memories of past lives should remain off limits.

Therefore, you have this screen which prevents you from directly learning what is stored in your Subconscious. To know your past lives may seem, at first, important, but really it's not. What if in a past life you were a murderer or a robber? Could you handle this information? Some say, that they would like to search into the Subconscious Mind and know why they have returned to this world and learn what it is they came here for. But if you find this out, and concentrate so hard on accomplishing this one thing, that you might, inadvertently, overlook something else which will cause you to have to come back down here. Actually, knowing your past lives, and why you came down here, is really unnecessary. What's really important is that you live this life to your very best. That each, and every day, you do the very best that you can and give life your very best effort. If you do this, then when you reach the other side you can say, you did your very best, and that is all anyone can ask.

Second, unlike your physical consciousness, your Subconscious hasn't the ability to discriminate between Truth and untruth. The Subconscious simply takes all information given to it by the physical consciousness and records it. The energy screen allows you time to hash over a problem, discerning what's right and what's wrong, and when you have come up with the right answer, or what seems right to you, your Subconscious then incorporates that into its storage banks. The screen prevents data from leaving your conscious mind, too soon, and entering the Subconscious. So, you know that your Subconscious Mind is the storage

house for all that you have ever done. You also know that it is not able to discern between Truth and untruth, but there is more. It will store whatever you know to be Truth. From this you can determine that your Subconscious is unable to reason, that is, unable to form conclusions or make judgments. The Subconscious is not logical. Yet, your Subconscious Mind plays a big role in your life. The biggest role it plays is to function as a relay between you, the physical consciousness, and your Oversoul.

Your Oversoul receives information on your progress down here on Earth from your Subconscious Mind and the Oversoul relays information and directives to your Subconscious, who then puts them into action in your life. This is an important aspect which I will expand on a little later. Your Subconscious Mind is also in link with all other Subconscious Minds. Your Subconscious Mind is able to tap in with any other Subconscious Mind, and they are able to pool information. So, if you were able to communicate with your Subconscious Mind directly, you would be able to find out from it information about anything that you needed to know. Your Subconscious has direct links with both your Oversoul and with all other Subconscious Minds. But communication with your Subconscious Mind is not an easy thing to do.

You can see by all the things your Subconscious Mind is involved in, that it is a very busy entity. Getting its attention is the task at hand. What would you do, if you were trying to get the attention of your next-door neighbor who is very busy in their house and who has never been disturbed before? You would go next-door, and knock, and call out their name, until someone answered. You are going to use a similar procedure with your Subconscious Mind. First, before you start knocking on your Subconscious Mind's door, you're going to do a little visualization. In your mind's eye, view a large room with storage files and computer data banks and a large control panel, and in charge of all this is your Subconscious, your Silent Witness, and who you will picture as your Silent Night Magician. You'll envision her/him dressed as you are dressed during your rituals in full Night Magick regalia. It is here, in this room, on the Isle of your Silent Magician located in the Mental Realm, that you will go to speak with your Silent Magician. Before you can communicate with Her or Him, let's first look at the language you must communicate in.

There is a special way that you must talk to your Silent Magician in order for Her/Him to understand you correctly. You know S/he can not reason nor is S/he able to be logical. S/he can not discern between Truth or untruth. So the Silent Magician takes everything you say very literal. So when you talk to your Silent Magician, you must use the most simple, direct, and plain language. You do not want to say anything which has a double meaning. For example, if you want to find out where your lost ring is, and you ask Her/Him if S/he knows if the ring is in the sink drain, the Silent Magician will answer, Yes! Yes, S/he does know if it is there or not, but that doesn't mean it is there. Ask Her/Him a direct question, "Is the ring in the sink drain of the kitchen?" Now that you have the preliminaries over with, it's time for you to get down to the actual business of communion with your Silent Magician.

To begin with, go into your Magician's Study and lie down and relax. Do some Night Breathing and get very comfortable. Now, envision the control room in your mind, where your Silent Magician is located. And once again, picture your Silent Magician at work. Now call out Her/His name. What's Her/His name?

You're going to have to give Her/Him a very personal name similar to the one you selected as your Night Name. This is a name that only you will know. You're not going to tell anyone else the name of your Silent Magician. Now, picturing very strongly your Magician at work, call out Her/His new name. A proper way of doing such would be to say, "You who are my Subconscious Mind and Silent Magician and Friend, I give you the name of \_\_\_\_\_." Say this at least three times. Then go on to say to, "when I call out your name you will please listen to me. I want you and me to be partners and friends for this will benefit both of us. I want you to help me in all that I do. I want this in all sincerity and honesty." Say this also three times. You must do this three times a day. You must grow use to saying and doing this and thinking of your Subconscious as a friend and ally. Know that when you have the attention of your Subconscious Mind, that you are without limitation.

The Silent Magician is all powerful and all knowing. S/He can be a tremendous ally. For now, this is all you should do. Just get acquainted with your Silent Magician and gain Her/His trust. You should always be truthful and straightforward with your Silent Friend. You, in your own right, are mentally strong and you are only a small fraction of your full potential. Imagine what would be your mental ability and the power of your thoughts, if you could increase them eleven fold. This can be, if you will tie in with your Silent Magician. Your ally on Earth. As you have seen, your Subconscious is unique. Even though S/he can not reason or be logical, S/he can do all that you can do. S/He can do all you can do only eleven times

greater. It is the seat of total memory. By reaching Her/Him, and convincing Her/Him that you need Her/Him, S/he will release information to you that you are unaware of, about yourself. S/he can correct wrongs with you such as, habits that you would like to be rid of, and can increase such things as your memory retention if you will work with Her/Him. You can also go direct to your Oversoul by gaining your Silent Magician's trust and aid. The Subconscious will be glad to go direct to your Oversoul for you if S/he truly sees the need. You must convince Her/Him of your sincerity and trustworthiness. You will be cooperating with your Silent Magician in the use of self-hypnosis, the pendulum, crystal, psychometry, and telepathy. So work hard on reaching your Silent Magician and developing the close rapport needed in your work as a Night Magician. Your first joint undertaking, between you and your Silent Friend, is the practice of self-hypnosis.

#### 34. Hypnotism and Self

In classical mythology, Hypnos was the god of sleep. He was the brother of Thanatos and the son of Erebus and Nyx. The word, hypnotism, is taken from the greek word, "hypnoein", which means, "to put to sleep". So you can see that hypnotism must have something to do with sleep, right? Actually, it doesn't have anything to do with sleep, except that when a person is in a hypnotic state of consciousness, s/he may appear to be sleeping. What then is hypnosis? In the state of hypnosis, you are extremely vulnerable to suggestions. For example, if you are told that when you put your hand in a vat of water and will feel a pleasant warmth, then this will be so. Even if the water in the tub is very, very cold. That doesn't mean that your hand won't be cold, but as far as your physical consciousness is concerned, the hand feels warmth from the cold water. How can this be? You're going to examine that very question in-depth and go on to learn some good uses for hypnotism and also the dangers of hypnotism. Lastly, you are going to learn how to induce self-hypnosis and the reasons for doing so. First though, let's see how hypnosis works.

To begin your investigation, you're going to examine the technique of a hypnotist at work. For in studying how a hypnotist works, you will be able to gain an insight into how hypnosis works. The hypnotist first needs a subject and that is going to be you. The hypnotist will then stand in front of you and s/he will suspend some shiny object and ask you to concentrate on the object. As you continue to concentrate, the hypnotist will begin the first of her/his suggestions to you; you are starting to feel drowsy. Next, s/he will tell you that your eyelids are starting to feel heavy. You can see already that from just trying to concentrate on the object that you will start to feel eye fatigue. And because your eyes are starting to feel tired, you already are beginning to trust the suggestions of the hypnotist. As the process continues, you will start to fall into an altered state of awareness. When the hypnotist has you deeply relaxed, s/he will continue with further suggestions. For example, s/he will then ask you to raise your right arm straight out in front of you. Then s/he will tell you that your arm is starting to feel very heavy and that you can hardly hold it up. Well, it's obvious that the hypnotist is requesting you to do things and then makes suggestions which corresponds with what you are feeling. But in all of this, there is a very real purpose, and that is for you to believe in the hypnotist. You are starting to trust the hypnotist and believe that whatever s/he tells you is going to occur. But actually, there is much more to it than just your outer conscious belief in the hypnotist.

Here, you rejoin your new friend, the Silent Magician, for the explanation. What the hypnotist has been doing is breaching the energy screen that is between you and your Silent Friend. The hypnotist has actually been working on the Subconscious Mind with her/his suggestions and gaining Her/His trust. When the hypnotist has convinced the Silent Magician that whatever s/he says is going to happen, then you are truly hypnotised. You will remember from the last topic, that your Subconscious is unable to discern between the Truth and untruth. They are not able to reason. So as you, the physical consciousness, trusted the hypnotist and began to believe in her/him, so the Subconscious Mind will too. The hypnotist, in convincing you with her/his simple suggestions has caused you to lower the energy screen between you and your Subconscious. Once this screen was lowered, the hypnotist is directly working with your Subconscious Mind.

All that s/he now tells you, your Silent Magician will believe and comply with. If s/he tells you when you look at an object, that you will not be able to see it, then to your physical consciousness, the object will not be there. This is hypnosis. Hypnosis can be a real benefit to humankind, but it can also be a real danger. There have been some valuable uses for hypnosis in today's society. Medically they have used hypnosis in some cases as a substitute for anesthetic. Thereby eliminating the dangers of having to anesthetize someone. The police have used it to hypnotize a crime victim, or witness, in order to draw out of the Subconscious Mind greater details of a crime, and so, possibly leading to the capture of the criminals. These

are some very positive uses for hypnosis.

Hypnosis can be a very dangerous subject. You should under no circumstances allow yourself to be placed under hypnosis by someone you do not fully trust. Nor should you undergo hypnosis for fun and games. Hypnosis is a serious business. When you undergo hypnosis, you surrender your Subconscious Mind, out of the Hands of your Oversoul, and into the hands of the hypnotist. As you can see, this can lead to some serious consequences for you, if you are in the wrong hands. Let your imagination conjure up the harm that can be done to you by the hypnotist. So let this be warning enough, **DO NOT BE HYPNOTIZED**, unless you are absolutely sure of the hypnotist and why you are being hypnotized. How can you get around the hypnotist?

You can circumvent her/him by using self-hypnosis. You are going to be the hypnotist. For sure, I can think of no better hypnotist than you, once you are properly trained. There are many reasons why you might want to use self-hypnosis. If you have ever wanted to stop smoking; to improve your memory; to stop a bad habit; to develop particular traits within yourself, for example, patience and calmness; then you will want to try self-hypnosis. For some, a big reason would be to lose weight. The possibilities are endless. When you tell your Silent Magician, in self-hypnosis, what you want, then you will see it occur in yourself. But be sure, if you are trying to give up something, that you truly want to give it up. Otherwise you won't be able to do it. As you begin to learn the techniques for self-hypnosis, you should be in reasonably good health. If you are in good health, then let's begin.

You will practice this in your Magician's Study insuring that the room is free from intrusion by others and without drafts. The room should be reasonably dark. Once all your room preparations have been made, then you should lay down on something comfortable. Now you are going to practice the complete body relaxation that you practiced in preparation for Night Projection. If you go through the same motions that you did in that topic, then you will have achieved the proper state of relaxation. To quickly recount what you did; you began thinking of your toes and erasing all tension in them. Then you went up the leg and did this for both legs. You worked on every part of your body achieving the fullest relaxation possible. This is what you want here. Now, practice some Night Breathing and deepen the relaxation. While you are breathing, just let your thoughts float on your breath. The key is to relax deeply. Now to contact your Silent Magician.

Pull your thoughts together and concentrate your gaze upon a point somewhere on the ceiling above you. This point should be at such an angle that it causes slight eye strain. Now, as you continue to stare, you will begin to feel eye strain. When you can feel this, you should then tell yourself, aloud, that when you count beginning from ten and reach one, you are going to close your eyes and be unable to open them. So let's do it.

"I am going to count from ten to one and when I reach one my eyes will close because they have become very tired. Ten, my eyes are starting to feel tired; nine, my eyes are becoming much more tired and I am beginning to feel like closing them; eight, my eyes are starting to become very tired; seven-six, my eyelids are becoming very heavy; five-four, my eyes are so tired that I have to close them; three, I can no longer keep my eyes open and feel a real need to close them; two, my eyes are so tired they will no longer stay open; one, my eyes have shut."

Your eyes should shut automatically, even if your eyes should not close do not worry. Go ahead and close them anyway for what you are doing is setting up an automatic reaction, within yourself, when you do this. Now that you have your eyes closed, let's continue with self-hypnosis.

You are going to visualize your Silent Magician and you are going to say outloud the following: "I am going to count from ten to one and when I reach one I'm going to be in a deep state of self-hypnosis. I'm going to be alert and fully conscious and my Friend is going to respond to all I say to her/him and comply with my desires. Ten, I am becoming very relaxed and my body is starting to feel very heavy; nine, my body is feeling heavy and my spirit is lightly floating within my body; eight-seven, I am becoming deeply relaxed and slowly entering into trance; six-five, I am now in trance yet alert and fully conscious; four-three, I am going deeper and deeper into trance; two, I am reaching the deepest state of trance every before achieved; one, I am completely in trance yet fully alert and conscious. State name of your Silent Magician please listen to me and do what I ask for."

Now is the time to make known to your Silent Friend all that you want her/him to do. Let's give Her/Him, though, only one thing per session. You are going to practice the entire technique, as outlined previously, for the first few times, until you can do it correctly and easily. Then you will condense the relaxation and self-hypnosis state into one happening. You are going to say to yourself that when you count to one, you are going to achieve a complete state of relaxation and self-hypnosis. That you are going to be fully alert and know what's

going on and that you are going to be able to direct your Silent Witness to do as you ask. The relaxation and self-hypnosis state should come easily, for it should now have become an automatic reaction. Do not have any fear of coming out of this state of self-hypnosis for it will happen automatically. Through self-hypnosis you can correct faults within yourself, or implant qualities that you would like to acquire. Through regular practice you can achieve this. This is serious business and should be approached as such. Self-hypnosis will achieve for you all that you desire, and you know that you're in safe hands, your own! Your Silent Magician will also be your partner and friend in your use of the Night Magician's Pendulum.

### 35. A Night Magician's Pendulum

On a dark green hill, encircled by gardens of flowers, immense old trees, fountains, and set against a starlit night sky we find the cave entrance to the cavern home of the Night Magician. A home dedicated to the ancient practice and knowledge of Night Magick. A home that is as ageless as the stars that it is dedicated to. As we enter this beautiful home, through its ancient portal, we can see into the Magician's Study and find the Ancient One, busy in observation of the stars through a cavern window. We continue to enter, very quietly so as not to disturb the Old One, when suddenly we are startled by the resounding chimes of a huge grandfather clock, in its act of proclaiming the hour of the night. The most striking thing about the clock is its beautiful, ornate brass pendulum. The pendulum swings side-to-side ticking away the hours. We all know that the pendulum is set so that time is measured out with the greatest of accuracy. But the pendulum is not just for telling time. The pendulum is also a valuable tool for the Night Magician. So let's leave the Old One and move to your Magician's Study to take up the study of the Night Magician's Pendulum.

Your pendulum is not going to be as ornate and beautiful as the one you just observed at the Magician's home, but it is based upon the same principle. The pendulum is made up of a long arm with a weight suspended on the end. The pendulum you will use is simple to make. You will want to construct at least two pendulums.

One will require a string at least forty-eight inches long, and the other about twelve inches long. A strong sewing thread will serve very well as the material from which to make the string. The weight you use can be made of a variety of things. The weight can be made of a round ball, about one inch in diameter, and constructed of wood, plastic, glass, or a neutral metal. You should have pendulums on hand made up of a variety of the materials just listed. You can also use a simple ring as a weight. Another very simple weight you can construct will require an unused pencil and sewing needle. Put the point of the needle through the top of the eraser, so that the needle will remain attached to the pencil. Then, put the thread through the eye of the needle and tie it off, and so, you have the complete pendulum. Once you have made, or acquired, your pendulums, what are you going to use them for?

Your pendulum will answer questions that range across the entire spectrum of your imagination. Have you lost a ring and want to find it? You could find missing people or a lost pet. The pendulum can answer questions you have concerning most any topic that you wish to pursue. But how can it do this?

For part of the answer you must look to your old friend, the Silent Magician. The pendulum is an instrument, used by the Silent Magician, to give you the answers to the questions that you put to Her/Him. In review, you will remember that your Silent Friend is very brilliant and there is very little that s/he does not know, or cannot find out, since They are in direct contact with all other Silent Magicians. You will remember that your entire body has an electrical field which completely surrounds it. When you have the pendulum suspended from your hand and ask your Magician a question, s/he alters the electrical field of your body. That field also surrounds the pendulum and causes it to move. The pendulum's movement has been set in a certain pattern to indicate Yes or No. The Silent Magician is not the only one who can alter the movement of the pendulum. Any resident of the higher realms can also alter your electrical field, and so the movement of the pendulum, if they know how. As a rule, the entity working with you, and through the pendulum, requires some time before they really can manipulate the pendulum well. So not only can you receive information from your Silent Magician but also your Guides and Teacher. Before studying the mechanics of how to use the pendulum, you must prepare yourself to use the pendulum.

The how-to of self-preparation is relatively simple to state, but often hard to achieve. You begin by being sure your hands and body are clean, otherwise this will interfere with your body electricity. You must have a calm and receptive mind. Your mind must be in a relaxed state and without nervous tension and fears. Your mind must be prepared to concentrate on only one thing, and that is what you are trying to answer. Your mental attitude must be a serious one when you approach this lore. If you have achieved this self-preparation in mind and body, then you're ready to begin learning how to use your Magician's Pendulum.

First, you will prepare your Magician's Study for the use of the pendulum. Be sure the room will be free from interruptions. Then erect a table to work on that is made up of only a hard top surface and four legs. Nothing should be under the table for this will interfere with the reception of the proper answer. In all cases, you will want to have blank, clean, unused, white sheets of paper.

The standard, eleven by eight white typing paper will be fine. This is the paper over which you are going to suspend your pendulum. On the paper, you are going to draw in the center a large plus sign(+). At the top and bottom of the paper, you are going to write the word, YES. On the right and left sides of the paper, you are going to write the word, NO. You will use a new sheet marked in this way for each set of questions asked pertaining to a certain area of examination. Please be sure and use a fresh sheet for each set of questions asked, for when questions are asked, the paper becomes saturated with the impressions from those questions, and these impressions will interfere with any other set of questions asked. To begin, you must formulate the questions you are going to ask.

For example, where is my lost gold ring? The question must be simple, clear, concise, and unambiguous. Then you must invoke the Night Pillar around yourself and your Magician's Study or the place you're working in. If you don't do this, then any force may use the pendulum and cause misleading answers. After this, you'll take the short stringed pendulum, between your hands, and concentrate on the Night Force around you. Then ask the question three times. Then, take the string of the pendulum and wrap it around the first or second finger of the right hand, if you are right handed; left hand if you are left handed, such that when you rest your elbow on the table, the weight of the pendulum is about an inch above the paper and suspended over the plus sign. Then, begin asking if the ring is in the kitchen sink, and so on. You can tell when the pendulum is answering you, because it will swing with purpose. Be sure and wait between each question, till the pendulum answers. If the pendulum makes a circling motion, this indicates uncertainty. Either the force guiding the pendulum doesn't know, the question is ambiguous, or they refuse to answer the question. Try asking the question in a more precise and clear way, and if there is still uncertainty, go on to another question. If you ask a question that involves a geographical answer, then you will need a map. If the search area involves a large area, use a map of small scale. This is a map which covers a large area of land on a small amount of map area. Then, when you have found a more precise location, use a larger scale map to get a pinpoint location. In order for you to use the map, place it on the left side, and the plus marked paper on the right. Take the pendulum over the map area and ask it to reveal the location of what you're looking for. Then hold the pendulum over the white sheet of paper as before, and as you ask your question, you'll move your left forefinger slowly over the map area. The pendulum will swing in the positive direction when you have reached the right area. This completes the instruction on the use of the pendulum, indoors. It takes practice to gain mastery over the use of the pendulum. You must be sure and use simple language and concentrate strongly on the question you want answered. Perhaps you've seen, or even used, some form of dowsing rod to locate water.

The dowsing rod works on the very same principles as the pendulum. For uniformity, and familiarity, you are going to use the pendulum outdoors in locating not only water, if that is what you want, but anything else you desire. For this method, you will now need your longer stringed pendulum. To start with, you must prepare the pendulum for your use. Let's say you want to find gold. Then you will need to place in, or on the weight of the pendulum, a sample of gold. This can be as small as a flake, but it must be pure gold. Further, you must put under your feet another piece of gold. The gold must be pure, so for example, if you use your wedding ring be sure it is solid, pure gold. Then, with your pendulum in the correct hand, you will again ask your Silent Magician or Guides to find gold for you. Then, loosely holding the string in the proper hand, slowly lower the weight towards the ground until it swings in a definite circular motion. You will need to experiment with the proper length of string, until you get just the right length which gives you the best circular motion. At this point, you should mark the string with a knot, and color code it, and record it for future reference. You can apply this same technique to anything that you want to find. You should take the time to prepare your pendulum for all the things that you will want to find. In all that you do with the Night Magician's Pendulum, you should remember certain key things in its proper use.

You should remember that in talking with your Silent Friend, you want to use the simplest and most direct language, and to repeat it at least three times. You should always remind your Friend that you need Her/Him, because what you ask Her/Him to do for you, S/he does for Her/Himself, too; that you are One in Thought and Purpose. So be sure, that whatever you decide to do, that it is in agreement with your inner beliefs. If you try to use it for something you know to be wrong, then your Silent Friend will stop working with you and that will be the

end of your growth. At the end of each set of questions, be sure and thank your Silent Magician for the aid that S/he has provided. Appreciation and respect, go a long way in your successful use of the Night Magician's Pendulum. Remember, that the pendulum is for your use alone. Never allow anyone else to use or touch your personal pendulum. You can use the pendulum to help others find answers to their questions but they should never use your pendulum to do so, you will use it for them. Most of all, you should go into this practice with the most serious of attitudes towards it. Your frame of mind can mean the difference between success and failure. Everything you do to get closer with your Silent Magician, Guides, and Teacher, and to make them your unfailing allies in all that you do, will bring mastery into your life here, and hereafter. The pendulum is the first of your new Magician's Tools to be acquired in Air Magick, and now you are to acquire your second tool, the Night Magician's Crystal Globe.

### 36. A Night Magician's Crystal Globe

You will remember that when you were in the Night Magician's cave last, you found the Old One busily engaged in the observation of the stars. Let's return to the Magician's cavern home and see if the Ancient One has begun some new practice from which you can observe and learn.

As you quietly enter the home, you have the feeling that you must go to the study. As you move into the study, you find the Ancient One sitting on the floor in an apparent state of deep meditation. You find that the room is very dark and that it is taking your eyes some time to adjust to the darkness. As you continue to observe the Magician, you suddenly become aware that more than just meditation is taking place. You can now see that the Wise One is gazing into a sphere of apparent nothingness. To your vision, there appears to be a hole of darkness into which the Magician seems to be gazing. You move closer to get a better view of what this phenomena is. You can now see that this sphere of emptiness is composed of what appears to be a clear substance. Suddenly, it dawns upon you that you are observing the Magician in the act of Crystal Gazing. Now you know this is what you are going to learn to do. Let's begin your instruction then with an in-depth examination of the Crystal the Ancient One was using.

The Crystal is spherical in shape and was so clear that there appeared to be nothing there in the darkness. Due to the clarity of the Crystal Globe, no reflection of light could be observed to give it depth. The Crystal Globe, that the Magician is using, is without flaw. If there were flaws in the Crystal then what light was available would cast reflections off these flaws and disturb the Magician's gazing. When the Magician gazes into the Crystal Globe it is like looking into a deep globe of nothingness. If you were to visit a store in order to purchase a Crystal Globe or even one of glass, you would find that a perfectly flawless one is very expensive. So for your purposes, you are going to use a crystal hollow globe with a hole in the top.

I indicated you should use crystal but glass will also do. The hollow globe should be as round as possible. The surface of the globe should be without flaws or markings. The globe should be about six inches in diameter. A similar globe is often sold as a fish bowl. It should be able to sit on a flat surface. If you have now purchased this Crystal Globe, then let's go on to prepare the gazing area.

Arrange your Magician's Study so that you can be seated comfortably on the floor, and in front of you, you should have your small Night Altar of about eighteen inches in height. There should be no strain on the back or shoulder muscles. If there is then adjust the height of the table. It is not absolutely necessary that you sit on the floor, for you can sit in a chair as long as you can see directly into the globe and it is within easy reach. Cover the table with a dark blue or black cloth. You must insure that almost all light has been eliminated from the room.

Be sure you are clean and have washed your hands before ever touching the globe. You must clean the globe, without soap, before filling it with water. Clean the globe under running water and hold the globe with a cloth and dry it before filling it. Never allow direct light to fall on the globe. Keep the globe in a safe place and wrapped in a dark cloth. Never allow the curious to touch the globe. After you have placed the globe on the table then fill it with water. Fill it all the way to the rim so that the globe appears to be solid. This takes care of your study preparation but you mustn't forget self-preparation.

Be sure you are in good health. Before you begin this exercise, you must be in a good mental state. Your mind should be calm and as free from worry as possible. Be sure that you have been eating sensibly and don't eat a big meal just before commencing to use the globe. Now you are ready to begin using the Crystal Globe.

Be seated comfortably and place the Night Pillar around you. You must practice Night Breathing for a few minutes in order to become more relaxed. Then place your hands on the bottom sides of the globe. Your hands should be in direct contact with the glass. Gaze lightly upon the globe. Do not begin with a fixed and concentrated gaze. Look at a point somewhere inside the globe and relax. Do not try to see anything. As you continue to gaze, you will see the globe start to cloud up with a whitish appearance. This is excellent and exactly what you want.

You should continue to gaze, and the cloudiness will disappear, and you will begin to see. You may even feel a slight falling sensation so don't be startled, or you will have to try another evening, which by the way is the best time to practice this.

There are three types of seeing that may occur.

You may actually see as if you were watching television. That is, you may see pictures and events occurring. Next, you may only see symbols. These are pictures which represent events or happenings. Finally, you may only receive impressions. You may only receive feelings and thoughts as to what is trying to be communicated to you. Whatever you receive, through the use of the Crystal Globe is a true achievement. You are successful, whether you see pictures, symbols, or impressions. In the beginning, you may encounter some difficulty in achieving any results.

You should only begin by gazing for about fifteen minutes at the most. By the end of the week, you should have extended that time to about thirty minutes. This is all that is recommended when you are first beginning. In the beginning, you will see only things that pertain to you alone. As you begin to see more clearly and easily, you should begin to direct the Crystal in what you want to see. As you first touch the globe and relax, concentrate a mental thought at the Crystal and tell it what it is you want to see. Eventually, you will gain control over the Crystal and be able to direct it at whatever it is you are interested in knowing. You can also use the Crystal Globe to give others a reading.

To do this, you will go through the very same setup procedures. Then before you actually touch the globe, direct the individual who desires the reading, to touch the globe and concentrate on what s/he wants to know about. You should also warn them, in advance, not to say anything that will disturb you while you are gazing and giving her/him their reading. Then, you will take over control of the Crystal and gaze upon it as you would for yourself, and give what you see.

In all cases, when you are through using the Crystal Globe, you will again rinse the globe and dry it off before putting it away.

The Crystal Globe works by focusing and concentrating the clairvoyant energies from your Night Eye Center. The Crystal Globe is an extension of your Night Eye. The globe, as with your own personal clairvoyance, is able to do many things.

The globe can help you look into the past, present, and future. It can help you look into any matter which concerns you and to see all sides of the matter under discernment. You can go anywhere at anytime and see all that you wish to see.

You must know that you are going to succeed each time you use the Crystal. Even if you don't succeed, you must not become discouraged. Every attempt at using the Crystal Globe leads you one step closer to success. You should have the attitude of a very personal commitment to the Crystal Globe. Always treat it with the utmost respect. The entire business of crystal gazing is very serious business and should be treated as such if you are going to succeed at it. Your next subject is also a form of seeing. Only instead of using the eyes to see with, you are going to use your hands.

### 37. Psychometry

Psychometry is the development of your clairaudient faculties in relation to your sense of touch. By psychometry, you are going to be able to pick up an object and know its origin and history. If the object ever belonged to someone, then you will receive the thoughts and feelings of that individual. Psychometry is related to your clairaudient faculties. Let's see how?

As you will recall, clairaudience is related to your fifth Night Center which is located at the throat level. As your Night Center begins to grow and develop, you develop the sense, in part, of being able to perceive sound from the Night Realm. You can hear in a sense, the voice of the Night Spirit and even the so called "Music of the Night Spheres". All of this is the attunement to, and perception of, higher vibration. An extension of your clairaudient ability is the perception of an object's vibration through touch. Your left hand, if you are right handed, is the sensitive hand to magickal vibration. All things, of all types of nature, have a personal vibration. That vibration is composed of the entire history and nature peculiar to that object. Your clairaudient faculty is able to attune to that vibration and translate it into pictures, sounds, and/or feelings that you can perceive.

Psychometry has many practical applications. You can see actual history taking place by using objects that are related to a particular historical event. But remember, you will see history as it related to that particular object and its part in that history. You can view the origin of the planet through very ancient objects. In a more practical application, you could pick up a book and get the basic feeling of that book and what it is about, and then decide if you are going to like reading it or not. You can learn about the inner nature of individuals of interest to you by examining an object which belongs to them. For example, this could help you

understand your employer better; why s/he expects certain things from you, her/his reasoning behind certain acts, and overall, help you to improve your working relationship with her/him. The possibilities are as endless as your imagination is fertile. How do you go about developing your clairaudient faculties in relation to psychometry?

To begin, let's look at the area of self-preparation. You are going to see a trend developing through self-preparation. As in the use of the Night Magician's Pendulum and Crystal Globe, you again need a clean body and hands, and a sound and tranquil state of mind. In review, I stated in topic thirty-two, "Power of Thought", that in all the exercises used to strengthen and train the mind, meditation was very important. Hopefully, you can see the reason for this and have been practicing it. Meditation builds for you a tranquil mind. If you have not been doing it, regularly, then get to it without fail. If you expect to achieve anything in the Night Magick, it must be done through a strong and tranquil mind. So much for self-preparation, now on to the mechanics of psychometry.

Hopefully, you have someone who is very sympathetic towards your magick and wishes to see you succeed in it. If so, get this person to pick up a smooth stone, and take that stone and wash it thoroughly, along with their hands. Then holding the stone in her/his left hand, allowing it to rest in their open palm, ask them to concentrate on a single thought. This thought should be simple. For example, thinking of the color red. Have them concentrate for several minutes on this thought. Then, s/he should wrap the stone in a clean cloth and give it to you. Then take the stone with you and retire to your Magician's Study.

Now lie down, relax, place the Night Pillar around you, do some Night Breathing, and place the stone in your clean, left hand. Let the stone rest in the palm of your open hand. Now you must allow your mind to be without thought and tranquil. Do not try to concentrate on the stone. Just relax and allow your mind to drift on nothingness. You may or may not feel a tingling in the palm of your hand. What you should receive is a feeling or impression, in this case, the color red. If not, then try moving the stone to your left temple and again relax. If you do not receive an impression do not be discouraged. It takes practice and perseverance to succeed. If you do not have someone who can help you, then you can try something else. The next time you receive a letter or bill, before you open it, retire to your room and go through the same procedures as just outlined above with the stone. As you receive the impressions, record them and then open the bill or letter and see if you're right. Remember, that many people will touch the letter or bill before it gets to you, and so their impressions will also be on it. This is psychometry.

You will receive impressions, feelings, or pictures from objects you touch. As your clairaudient faculties develop through practice, you will be able to see easier and much more extensively into the depths of an object's history. Practice and perseverance is the key to mastery. Not only in psychometry, but in all things as they relate to a Night Magician's life. Your next subject is something which has long been talked about, and yet not understood. You are going to learn to bridge the gap between your mind and another.

### 38. Telepathy

We have all heard the old phrase, "you must be reading my mind". The other person seemed to know your thoughts in some way. This ability to know another's thoughts is telepathy.

Telepathy is the ability to be able to transmit and/or receive thoughts from one person to another. You are going to learn how to do this and some of the possible uses, but first, you should learn how telepathy works.

In order to understand how telepathy works, you need to go back and re-examine the workings of the brain. The brain is an extraordinarily complex organ, and its physical workings are little understood. What is known about it, and the key to understanding how telepathy works, is that in the brain's functioning it generates electricity. This electricity is very fine and can be measured upon an electroencephalograph (EEG). Your brain emits high frequency waves upon which thought is carried. Your brain operates upon a certain frequency which is unique for each individual. When you can attune yourself to that frequency generated by the brain's electrical functioning then you can intercept and comprehend another's thought waves. As a radio can receive radio waves when tuned to the proper frequency, so can your brain receive thought waves from another person when properly attuned to them. Occasionally, a person is telepathic to another, unknowingly, because each is very close in frequency to the other. They seem to be able to know what the other is thinking constantly, and this is because of the close harmony between their personal frequencies. Couples who have been married for sometime grow close in harmony and each becomes attuned to the other's thoughts. You are not limited, though, to accidental telepathic reception.

You can learn to consciously tune in to anyone you desire. Thought wave attunement is achieved through the opening of your crown Night Center. Not only are you able to tune into

other peoples' thoughts, but you are able to begin receiving direct communication with your Oversoul. To begin this awakening of your Crown Center, you must have begun to reach some mastery over the mental exercise in topic thirty-two. You must be achieving a strong and tranquil mind. If you are to practice telepathy, you are going to need someone who you can send thoughts to, and who will, in turn, transmit to you. If you have such a person, then at a certain designated time each of you is going to retire to your Magician's Study, dim the lights, and try to eliminate all possible distractions.

One of you will have agreed, in advance, to be the transmitter and the other the receiver. People generate thoughts constantly, but they do this in such a scattered manner that the thought goes in all direction and carries little effect. You, though, are going to concentrate and direct your thought specifically at the receiver. As the transmitter, you will have prepared, in advance, a simple message or symbol to transmit. So lie down and become very relaxed. You must place the Night Pillar around you and practice Night Breathing for a few minutes. You should have in your hand a picture of the person you are going to transmit to. Spend a few moments thinking of this person and all the things that bring you both together. Then for about five to ten minutes, you will transmit the message. This completes the portion for the transmitter.

As the receiver, you also will lie or sit down and become very relaxed. Place the Night Pillar into action and practice Night Breathing for a few moments. You will need a picture of your transmitter and will be thinking of those things that draw you together in harmony. The you will allow your mind to become still and without thought. Just let go for about five to ten minutes and receive. Sound easy?

It will become so if you practice and do not become easily discouraged. After you have completed this exercise, you will certainly want to call each other and check the results. Don't become upset, though, if it did not work. Be positive, know it works, and in a short time, you will be able to do it, not only with your friend, but with anyone you meet. The uses for telepathy are numberless and important.

It would be great if you could transact business with another and know whether you were getting a good deal or not. You would always be able to stay in touch with your friends and know if there are ever any problems. If you had a friend who was ever in trouble or danger, they could beam a thought to you, for help, and you could go to them. The possible uses for telepathy are endless. Make the most of them. As you continue to develop your telepathic abilities, and thus your seventh Night Center, the closer you will become to your Oversoul. You have learned to use your mind for communication with other minds. Next, you will learn to use your mind to travel in the Mental Realm.

### 39. Mental Projection

You will recall, in Night Projection, you traveled in the Astral Realm in your Astral Body. So you can conclude, in Mental Projection, you will travel in the Mental Realm in your Mental Body. You can look upon Mental Projection as the "flight of the mind". It is with your mind that you will see and visit places, and find a universe open to your mental explorations. So let's begin this topic with a short flight, and view one of the many places that are open before you.

Ten, nine, eight, seven, six, five, four, three, two, one... and you have lift-off. You begin to climb through the sky, leaving the Earth far, far behind, and enter the darkness of deep space. You continue to travel at the speed of thought passing by planets and stars in the twinkle of an eye. In moments, you find yourself approaching the first planet in your journey. The planet's side you approach is enveloped in the darkness of night. As you approach it closer, you see, outlined in the light of a setting sun, a vast beach and cliffs upon which a great ocean touches, and whose waves gently caress it. Set in the side of the cliffs is a great door which you know leads to a vast city below the surface. You, mentally, beam a message asking to enter, where upon the great door opens and you find yourself moving rapidly through a long, lighted tunnel. Inside, you find a great city shrouded in the twilight of an artificial night. There are beautiful fountains and statues inside and buildings resembling those of Ancient Greece. By some unknown force, you are now led away from this city beneath the surface and find yourself leaving the planet far behind, and once again, traveling through space. You soon approach your next destination, which is a planet that, at first, appears similar to the one you just left. As you grow closer, though, you see a culture much different than the last one. Here, the culture is very mechanized, and the citizenry live upon the surface. The dwellings are very rustic and blend naturally with the bareness of the planet. You continue to watch with fascination at the unique machinery and lifestyle of the people. You find, though, that you are starting to grow weary and feel a need to return to your origin. So you return to your body which you left far behind on the planet Earth. You think of your body, and its place on Earth, and the sensation

of rapid movement, of flight, is upon you again. Pinpoints of light and matter, again, whisk past you with incredible speed. Then, you feel the slowing in movement, and the heaviness of your body, and ...Ten, nine, eight, seven, six, five, four, three, two, one..., you have arrived. So ends your short flight of the mind through time and space. Were you really there? Did you see the planets, buildings, and people?

The answer is a definite, Yes! There is no place or time period that you cannot visit in Mind. You can visit anyplace on your planet or see anyone. You can travel back into time or go forward into the realm of possibilities. As you have seen, you can travel to any planet, of any star system, of any galaxy. You can even travel into the various planes of the Magickal Realm. The only restraints to your traveling is your own magickal development.

Your own magickal development is the only limiting factor as to where you can travel. This applies to Night, as well as Mental Projection. You are allowed to see and visit those things which have an equal or lower vibration to your own. For example, each planet, in the universe, has a unique magickal vibration. In order for you to see and visit a planet, your own vibration must be equal or higher to it. Otherwise, you will be prevented from going there. Similarly, for you to visit a magickal level or plane, you must have an equal or higher vibration in relation to it. Of course, the solution to unlimited travel is a personal magickal vibration that allows you to go anywhere. Although there will always be magickal plateaus that you must strive for, you can develop magickally so that you are relatively unrestricted in your magickal travels. How do you develop magickally?

The answer has been before you all along. You must follow the instruction outlined in this book. If you follow these instructions, live by the Will of your Oversoul within you, then your magickal growth will be both rapid and unending. Being Magickal is not being able to read minds or see in the Night Magician's Crystal Globe, but is based on living as the Oversoul on Earth. Telepathy, crystal gazing, and all that you are studying, is developing within you the necessary physical, emotional, mental, and magickal discipline that will aid you in living as the Oversoul on Earth. This, brings true magickal growth that will be with you forever and ever.

To practice Mental Projection, you must be physically fit and mentally sound. Your mind must be in a state of peace and relaxation. Your mind must be free of tension and worries and your body should be in good health, especially your heart. You do not have to wait for truly advance magickal growth in order to start traveling mentally. The only thing, as said before, is that your magickal development will limit those places that you can visit. As you continue to travel and grow magickally so will the places that you can visit grow in clarity, beauty, and magick. The "how-to" of Mental Projection is not that difficult.

You must enter your Magician's Study and extinguish all light in the room. The room should be in almost total darkness. Then, you should be seated or lying down in a very comfortable and relaxed manner. You must place the Magician's Night Pillar around yourself and begin Night Breathing. You must achieve a very relaxed and calm state of body and mind. Once you have reached this state, you are ready to take flight with your mind. In Mental Projection, unlike Night Projection, you are not going to project a body in which your consciousness is going to travel. In Mental Projection, only your consciousness is going to be projected forth. Remember, your Mental Body is your consciousness. In Night Projection, you projected forth your Astral Body from your physical body, and in that Astral Body you placed your consciousness. In Mental Projection, all visual and emotional sensation will center around the forehead of your physical body. It is from here, that you will project your formless Mental energies or consciousness.

To start with, you must visualize in your mind the place, person, and/or thing you wish to visit. Once you have in mind where you want to travel to, then you should imagine your mind doing the traveling and actually going there. See your formless Mental energies going forth to discover and see in the Mental Realm. You will feel your consciousness starting to travel forth into the Mental Realm. You will have visual impressions of your surroundings passing you by, just as if you were traveling in an airplane, only much faster. Then you'll begin to truly see your destination.

In the beginning, your visual images may be hazy and faint. But as you practice, the images will become clearer and take on color. While Mental Projecting, if you want to go somewhere else then where you're currently visiting, all you have to do is concentrate on the place you want to be, and with the speed of thought you will be there. Where your thoughts are, there you will be too. In no way, should you force Mental Projection. When you project, it must be from the area of the forehead. If you feel a swaying sensation from your entire body, then you are starting to project the Astral Body, rather than the Mental Body. Your conscious projection of the Mental Body must be from the forehead. You must center your conscious efforts to project

from the area of the head. You should definitely know that it is your mind body that you do travel and see through. You are actually present in your Mental Body and can send magickal healing and power through it to any person, place, or thing as you feel the need. When you are ready to return, you should do so slowly and easily. You should see yourself returning the same way you went.

As you begin to feel your physical body again, for while in traveling you will forget it, move the fingers and hands slowly. Next, you will concentrate on your breathing, and you will find the need to take a deep breath, for while traveling, your breathing has become very slow and shallow. In all, return very slowly and you will prevent any harm to yourself, for returning too quickly can cause headaches and an "out-of-sorts" feeling. Mind Traveling is your key to unlimited new discoveries in life. You can visit and stay in touch with friends and love ones far away. You can see cities, great libraries, countries, and places untold. You can go into space and discover new worlds and civilizations. Your past and future are open to your exploration. You can even explore the Magickal Realms and see the Magickal Leaders and Teachers of the world. At first, go easy in learning to use your mind to travel with. You must practice and be patient and the results are assured. Remember, Mental Projection is your means to worlds untold; the passport is your own magickal development. You have finally reached the topic that you waited so patiently for. So without further delay, let's learn how to create the world around and within you that you desire to have.

#### 40. Creative Visualization

The Magick of Creative Visualization is awesome. There is absolutely nothing you cannot create into your world through Creative Visualization. There are examples of people who used the power of Creative Visualization throughout history. Look at the lives of Albert Einstein, Thomas Edison, and Leonardo Da Vinci. Look at the lives of Mozart, Beethoven, and Wagner. In all these lives and thousands more like them, they used their minds and a vision they held in their minds and created and changed the world. They created intuitively. You too can become like them by knowing how its done and then using it. The whole process is known as Creative Visualization.

Through this process, you will be able to create for yourself and others anything that you desire. Remember always to create within the laws of the Eternal Night Balance and the Silver Rule. As long as you follow these two principles there is absolutely nothing you cannot create into your world through Creative Visualization. The process of Creative Visualization is broken down into two basic parts, a.) Imagination and b.) Invocation. The process ends with the final results of c.) Materialization. So without further delay, let's begin with imagination.

##### a. Imagination

Imagination is a product of your mind. It is the ability of your mind to be able to visualize, picture, envision, or imagine situations and things. As a kid, you used your imagination in playing house. You imagined yourself as either the father or mother and your toy dolls as your children. Your house was a big box that you got from the local appliance dealer that once contained a refrigerator or stove. Or remember the time you laid down on the soft, cool, green grass and looked up at the big, fluffy, white clouds on a warm summer day and imagined what this cloud or that looked like. Some looked like big elephants or dogs and others looked like planes. Remember? This is your imagination at work.

As an adult, you constantly use your imagination to imagine what an interview is going to be like with the new boss, or what an appointment with the dentist is going to feel like. If you have a birthday coming up, you try to imagine what gifts are going to be given to you and who will send cards. You constantly employ your imagination in your life. Your imagination is a very powerful force in your life. In fact, your imagination is the most powerful force in your life today. Disagree?

Well if you do, then let's look at some examples. Many will say that your will is the strongest force in your life but this can be easily disproved. In any contest between the will and the imagination, the imagination always wins. For example, let's take a catwalk high above the factory floor. The catwalk is only two feet wide and there are guard rails at waist height running the fifty foot length. Can you cross it in safety and ease? Sure, for you have the added safety measure of the guard rails. Now, let's take away the guard rails. Has your ease in crossing changed any? The catwalk is still quite wide enough to cross with ease but when you take away the guard rails, your imagination starts to go to work. You look at the long drop below and without the rails, you start to imagine what would happen if you slip. It will be hard to convince your imagination that you can cross without any danger. You find that you are truly scared at walking on a two-foot wide catwalk suspended one hundred feet in the air. If you attempt to force your will over your self, this will only create more tension, and begin to cause your body to shake and sweat to appear on your forehead, and you will be totally unable

to cross. Your imagination wins. Another example of how your imagination has been used as a powerful force in your life is the fear that many people have of a place called Hell. Churches have long used the idea of Hell to keep people in line. In your imagination, you believe that if you are not good and do exactly what the church says, you will pay for it by going to a very, very hot, sulfurous, brimstone place, and there suffer eternal torment. If you truly believe this and have convinced your imagination of this, then you will not do any wrong if possible. Your imagination is even stronger than the sexual forces in your life. It is in your imagination that a particular type of man or woman is attractive to you. Imagination must come first before the sexual forces can be activated. So, your imagination is dominant even over your love life. As you have just seen in these examples presented here, and many more that come to mind, the imagination is a very powerful force. Whatever you imagine to be true in your life, your imagination will insure that it is so in your life. If you feel that an unsupported walk will be very dangerous, then your imagination will conjure up the most dismal of pictures in your mind's eye, of you lying broken up on the floor far, far below. The idea, then, is to learn to use your imagination constructively. You must learn how to manipulate your imagination to achieve materialization. With your imagination, you are going to learn to imagine whatever it is that you desire to happen.

To begin with, you should have by this time become quite proficient at visualization. The hows of this was discussed in topic thirty-two, exercise four. If you haven't been doing this exercise, then refer back to it and begin doing so at once until proficiency is obtained.

Whatever it is that you want to happen, you must first be able to visualize it. Once you have visualized it clearly in your mind's eye, then you must continue to add to the visualization using your imagination and give it substance. Let's begin with an easy example.

You want to create an apple. First, you would have already visualized the apple itself. You have pictured, in your mind, a bright, beautiful apple. Then with your imagination, you will continue to add substance to it by adding the color to its skin. Now, you have a bright, beautiful, red apple. Then you will, in your imagination, see the insides of the apple, and how beautifully yellow they are. Then, go on remembering how delicious and sweet they taste, and even how fragrant it smells. In your imagination, hold this total picture of a bright, red, yellowish insides, sweet tasting and smelling apple. This is how you will use your imagination in Creative Visualization. But you don't have the apple yet, do you? You need something more than just your imagination alone. You need the added ingredient of Invocation.

#### b. Invocation

You are probably asking yourself what I mean by Invocation. The very meaning of the word tells you what is required next. Invocation is the act of calling upon a deity or higher power for aid in accomplishing something. In Night Magick you are going to invoke the aid of your Oversoul to complete the act of Creative Visualization. It is your Oversoul who answers your invocation. The Oversoul places into your world those things you desire to see in it. There are no limitations placed upon what invocation can do when combined with visualization and imagination. None! How do you invoke so that your Oversoul will answer with action? First, you must have the attention of your Oversoul. If you have been practicing meditation with dedication and sincerity, then you will have been slowly opening the Crown Night Center or your Portal to your Oversoul. In your practice of meditation and Night Magick overall, you have been practicing a way of life that raises your magickal vibration and that of your Oversoul, too. When you dedicate yourself to this magickal way of life, your Oversoul then becomes directly involved in your magickal growth. So, since you have been practicing meditation all along, you know that your Oversoul is listening. To begin your invocation then, you must establish that communications link with your Oversoul. You can do this standing, sitting, or lying down, whichever you are most comfortable with. Then, you will put the Night Pillar around yourself. You will need to use your imagination and see yourself as the Living Oversoul. Envision yourself dressed in a seamless, black garment glowing in intense magickal radiation. You must see yourself as you would imagine your Oversoul must seem in Its Realm. That is, as an embodiment of Power and Glory unknown on Earth. You must go beyond just imagining yourself as the Oversoul on Earth. You must know that you are the Oversoul. That if you raise your vibration high enough, and know that you are the Oversoul, then your Oversoul will join you on Earth and will work with, and through you. At this point, you will start to feel an increase in heart rate and exhilaration unknown to you before. Through this, you will know your Oversoul is listening and is with you. Even if you don't feel this exhilaration, be assured, that your Oversoul is with you. Then you can say your invocation to your Oversoul. There is a certain way that the invocation should be said. This is not like a typical prayer that you have been taught how to say. Your invocation is more a command and affirmation. The invocation should be based on the following example: "Darkest Oversoul which I AM, send

your Yin Light and Energy through me. For I AM the Oversoul in Action here on Earth and live by Your Will alone. I AM commanding as Oversoul in Action here on Earth that your request be done. By the Oversoul's Will let it be done. So be it." You should repeat this invocation three times. If you do this with all sincerity and knowing that it will be done, then it will be done. The result of this invocation and your use of imagination is defined as Materialization.

### c. Materialization

What is materialization? Materialization is the bringing forth into material or physical existence your desires. This is the ultimate goal of Creative Visualization. You want to bring into the material world your ideals. Can you achieve this materialization through invocation alone? No, you must have the combination of imagination and invocation together. One question that may come to your mind is where the apple, or anything that you are trying to create, materializing from?

When I speak of using your imagination to form the image of what it is you want, you are also using concentrated thought. You are building this image first on the Mental Realm. As you continue the imaginative process, you continue to fill the image with your emotions or feelings about what it is and like to have. Thus, you continue to build it, and so, lower it into the Astral Realm. The object is actually materializing on both the Mental and Astral planes. Then, you employ your power of invocation, building or materializing it on both the Magickal and the Etheric planes. In the materialization of objects, this form, made up of condensed energy, will create the necessary events in order to manifest into your or another's world, depending on what it is you are trying to achieve. If you are of advanced magickal development, with a need of the object immediately, then physical matter will start to form around the energy form until you have the final material product. With your imagination and invocation, you are programming the energy form to materialize. The energy form will do whatever is necessary to bring about the creation. Let's return back to the apple you were trying to materialize, and see the whole process through.

Remember, you were imagining a bright, red, yellowish insides, sweet tasting and smelling apple. You had used your imagination to such a point that you could almost smell and taste that apple. At that moment, you would go on to use invocation. You now see yourself as the Oversoul on Earth. You truly feel Its Power and Energy descend upon you and know that you are One. Now, you would insert in your invocation the image of your apple. From this, you would have your apple. Is the apple going to be right there in front of you, after you do all of this?

That depends on you and your magickal development. If you have reached the state of Night Consciousness, then YES, the apple will be there in front of you. For in Night Consciousness, you and the Oversoul are One. There is perfect communion and cooperation in all things. In lesser magickal development, the apple would have been there, but only as low as the etherial state. But, what is in the etherial state of materialization will eventually have its material existence fulfilled. Somehow, and eventually, that bright, red apple will come into your life. Food is not the only thing that you can materialize.

There is no limit on the physical objects that you can materialize into your life, but more importantly, there is no limit to the physical happenings that you can cause to exist. By physical happenings, I am referring to events or changes to occur in your or another's life. For example, you may want to become more like one of the Night Teachers. You would, then, first activate your imagination and begin to build the image of the Teacher you would like to become more like. Think of all the qualities and attributes held by that Teacher. What they look like? What mannerisms? Build the image very strong and then you will slowly start to see yourself taking on these magickal qualities. You should then bring in your invocation. You will ask your Oversoul to build within you, the qualities found in the Teacher. You should then continue this visualization over a long period of time. In other words, you must practice this visualization process many times, over a long period of time, in order to become fully like the Teacher. There is no way of knowing how long it will take to acquire these qualities. But as each day goes by, you will become more and more like your Night Teacher. The change will hardly be perceptible to you, but change you will. You can help build these qualities into other people. You can materialize in anyone, anything, through your imagination and invocation. Through Creative Visualization, you could achieve unlimited supply of the things you need on Earth and the Soul qualities you need in life to reach Night Consciousness. You have traveled to the end of your journey in Air Magick.

You began it, by visiting the dimension where the Great Ones live and bring into mental creation, what will soon thereafter become a physical discovery and invention. You have long been convinced, by now, of the great power of your thoughts, and the even greater power of your Friend, the Silent Magician. You have learned to bring improvements into your life through

self-hypnosis. You have acquired new Night Magician Tools such as the Pendulum and Crystal Globe. You have learned to travel to anywhere, at anytime, through Mental Projection, and to invoke or communicate with your Oversoul. Best of all, you have learned to control the world around you and create as the Oversoul through Creative Visualization. You have come a long way on the road of Night Magick, but the road stretches out before you a bit farther. You find yourself journeying on the last part of the Night Road and entering the Night Realm.

## CHAPTER VII

### Night (Fire) Magick

#### 41. The Night (Fire) Realm

Fire was the fourth element held sacred by the Ancient Magicians. Fire represents a Magickal Energy that transforms the lower nature into the Magickal. It was used in Magickal Alchemy to represent the transmuting agent necessary to change ordinary metals or souls, into silver or the Oversoul. It is symbolic of the Oversoul and the Night Forces, pouring forth into the life of the Night Magician, changing the base elements into the Silver of the Oversoul. This is the final realm into which you will enter for exploration. It is the Realm of Magickal and Celestial Energies. In this topic, you will explore the Night Realm, as the Land of the Perfected Night Magician. You will learn of the different vibrational levels of the Night Realm. You will, then, enter the Inner Night Realm found within you; and the purpose of this chapter on Night Magick. If you are ready, let's discover the Night Realm.

This is a realm, that for many, even a glimpse of it is still far down the road. It is a realm of pure Night Power and Energy. It is a Realm of Pure Night. The beauty of this realm, words can not describe. I made an attempt earlier in the book to describe this realm, and could not even come close in describing the Power and Energy found in this world. If, in your highest magickal imagination, you could envision a Magickal Realm of dazzling, silver, violet, and dark light, that fills every part of your being with a warmth and power beyond description, then you would have some idea of the Night Realm. If you could imagine a power that flows through you, giving to you knowledge and wisdom beyond anything you know; to know yourself as timeless and eternal; then you would know the Night Realm. In the Night Realm, you would see each other as radiating Spheres of Eternal Night Energy, outshining even your surroundings. As has been said before, you must strive to reach this realm, for it is only then, when you see and experience it yourself, will you truly know the Night Realm. The Night Realm is divided into numerous vibrational levels.

Each level is the home for Beings of compatible harmony and vibration. The Night Realm can be viewed as having basically two major levels. The higher region, I will refer to as the Celestial Night, and the lower as the Magickal Night.

The Celestial Night is the home, so to speak, of the Night Spirit. It is the region of the Night Spirit Power and Energy. Beyond this, very little can be said about this region. The concepts that make up this region go well beyond your understanding. Perhaps it is here, that I should discuss the concept of dimensions.

Referring back to the Astral Realm, you will remember that when you are in it, that you could do a great deal of things that you could not do on Earth. You could float in the air, conjure up a four course meal, build a house by thought, and could return to the lower level of Earth. In your Astral Body, you could go through Earthly walls and not be seen by people still in an Earthly Body. On Earth, you often refer to the physical plane as the third dimension, and you could, therefore, refer to the Astral Realm as the fourth. If you go to the next dimension, that is the fifth, you would have an even greater range of abilities and be governed by totally different concepts than those of the lower dimensions. With each higher dimension, the concepts that apply become more abstract and less understandable by those in lower dimensions. This is why the Celestial Region is far beyond your understanding. This region could be viewed as the twentieth or fiftieth dimension. It is well beyond comprehension. Then, there is the Magickal Region.

You could view it as the ninth or tenth dimension. So again, understanding of its composition and concepts is well beyond you. You do know that it is the home of your Oversoul. It is the place you know as the Realm of the Perfected Night Magician. It is the region of Magickal Wisdom. It is here that all ideas and prototypes are fixed and released into the lower dimensions below and become manifest on each level. This is the dimension where you find the Causal Body.

The Magickal Region holds the vehicle through which you enter your Inner Night Realm. You enter the Inner Night Realm through your Causal Body. Your magickal nature is found summed in the Causal Body. All that you have ever done has gone into molding the Causal Body. The Causal Body is as inert and undeveloped as any other Body or vehicle in which you have had to find expression here on Earth. All that you have ever done, has gone towards

refining the Causal or Magickal Body. You could liken the Causal Body to a treasure chest. It is here, that you store your Magickal Silver. Your Magickal Silver consisting of all the accomplishments and growth you have ever acquired while in existence. It is these things which activate and quicken the Magickal Body. It is through this Magickal Vehicle, that you are joined in Oneness with your Oversoul. It is the Oversoul's Magickal Body, as well as yours. This is why I have stressed to give so much energy to Night Magick. This is why I have stressed, so much, on the things that you must do to grow magickally. When the Causal Body is perfected then you join the Oversoul in Perfection and Energy. Then, you reach up and into the Consciousness of your Night Soul. This is why I have presented this chapter on Fire or Night Magick.

Through the practice of the information, exercises, and rites found in this chapter, you will greatly enhance the development of your Causal Body. Through hard effort, dedication, perseverance, and patience, you can achieve perfection of the Magickal Body. You will expand, refine, and fully develop your Magickal Body and the perfection of your Inner Nature. All that you will do, in this chapter, will directly effect your Oversoul. S/He will be your active Partner and Friend in your life. You will learn to give and apply magickal healing direct from the Oversoul within. You will learn the Night Rites, which will directly bring power and energy into your Inner Being and the world around you. You will learn how to use the Night Powers and Flames, and the great changes that you can bring into the world through them. There are other subjects that you will explore, and that will bring knowledge and wisdom into your life from their study. This is your final chapter and will, perhaps, open up before you knowledge and power never before encountered. Remember, that in all you learn and practice, you must remain in the Energy and Will of your Oversoul.

Even though this is the final chapter, and you may have been sailing along in your education in Night Magick, and passing all the tests, remember, that your study and progress goes on forever into eternity. You will never stop learning and growing in Night Magick. Beyond this Earthly life, there is so much that awaits before you. So, practice Night Magick with dedication and perseverance and remain victorious on the road of Night Magick. Your first subject for discussion, in Fire Magick, is the Great Magickal Beings who are the Citizenry of the Magickal and Material Universe.

#### 42. The Solar, Planetary, and Lunar Powers

It may come as a shock to you, but the Stars, Planets, and Moons that you look upon every day and night are indeed Great Magickal Entities. Descending from out of the Celestial Realm, they have chosen to incarnate into the Stars, Planets and Moons. Their magickal path is one of many advanced magickal paths, but it is a very important path. It is important, especially in regards to you, for it provides places upon which lesser souls may find development and magickal advancement. Humans are not, by any means, the only race in the universe. The Stars, Planets and Moons are, indeed, Conscious, Sentient Beings, each with their own personal natures. Under this topic, I am going to discuss each of these Inner Natures. I will begin with a discussion of the Solar Life. I will then discuss the Planetary and Lunar God/Goddesses, in general, and then discuss, specifically, the Inner Natures of each. Along with discussing their Inner Natures, I will also talk about the auric effect of each, upon you. If you are ready, then let's proceed to the Solar Force.

The visible Stars are inhabited by advanced beings following the Yang path of development. There is no doubt that physically we need the Sun in order to provide physical heat and act as a physical source for the positive solar energy needed by living things on Earth. As a Night Magician you will become very sensitive to solar energy. As your depth in the Night proceeds you will need less and less of the solar energy. You want to be very careful not to receive too much sunlight and so become overcharged with solar force. This will definitely harm your magickal workings. I have been to places where the Night Force was so strong that it acted much like a polarized lens and filtered the harmful energy of the Sun from me. But these places are few and far between. If you wrap yourself tightly in your Night Pillar then you will greatly minimize the harmful effects of the Sun.

Within this system though because it is a Yin system there is also the Dark Sun. It is also called the Black Sun. The Black Sun absorbs too much Yang Energy and moves it to another time and place that is a Yang system. The Black Sun is the source of all Yin Energy in this Dark Solar System. It is the Parent Force to the Planetary and Lunar Deities. Let's examine this parenthood some more.

You will remember that every human being receives its Oversoul and Godsoul from a part of the great whole which is the Earth Goddess/God's Oversoul and Godsoul. In similar manner, the Planetary and Lunar Deities receive their Oversoul and Godsoul from the Dark Sun. So we have the Dark Sun as the sum of the whole, who then divides Its Eternal Self into smaller

pieces who are the Planetary and Lunar Deities, and they in turn divide their sum into individual sparks which become encased in the material world. The Ancients knew, though enshrouded in myth, that the Planets and Moons are the physical vehicles of very advanced beings. You are familiar with your own physical body and the other vehicles that make up your material being. You also know that you have an aura that is charged with emotions and thoughts. When you meet someone in the office, for example, and come within range of their aura, you often sense things about that person. If they are feeling uplifted, or angry and depressed, you can sense that about the person. You also have found that if you permit it, their aura may induce these same feelings in you. This is somewhat similar when we speak about the Planetary and Moon Spirits having bodies.

They do have bodies, and along with that, they also have an aura that is supercharged with emotions and thoughts that reflect the Inner Nature of their Being. Their bodies are enormous and so are their auras. Thus, the effect of these auras is far reaching. Yet, I want to say this: Humankind are foolish creatures when they allow the Stars, Planets, or Moons to rule their destiny. The effect of Their Auras may heighten the highest qualities in humankind but they do not rule humankind's destiny. Your destiny is in your own hands and the Hands of Your Oversoul. Remember this. Now what effects do these Great Ones have upon you.

When the Dark Sun runs strong through you, you find yourself filled with vitality and health. You are ambitious, proud, strong willed, and face life with great courage. You have a very strong and stable personality. You have a great drive and zest for life. You are a very independent and confident soul. You are generally quick witted, perceptive, thoughtful, and considerate. These are the things that the Dark Sun can bring out in you. You will soon learn how to increase the power of the Dark Sun that runs through your veins. You will learn how to do this through the Night Rites. The Dark Sun does run through everyone, to some degree, but can be greatly intensified by practicing the Night Rites.

From the Dark Sun we proceed onward with the Planetary and Lunar Spirits. The first-born Children of the Father-Mother Dark Sun are the Planetary and Lunar Night Powers. Each Night Power has elected to incarnate into a planetary or lunar physical body. They serve the noble purpose of giving a home to countless souls. They serve as Father, Mother, and Guardian to all the souls incarnate thereon. They are beautiful, Magickal Beings of the Night Spirit's Power. They all embody the Energy of the Night Soul. They all serve to help the progress and advancement of lesser souls. Think about this; you only live a span of generally less than one hundred years, but they live a life that is many billions of years long! Thus, you should recognize them for what they are, and give them your energy as best you can. Each Planetary and Lunar Night Power has followed a separate and unique magickal evolution, which is ever ongoing, just as you have. The only thing is, that they have been at it a lot longer than you have. You find that, just as you are strong in certain inner traits and qualities, so the Planetary and Lunar Night Beings are. They have embodied certain magickal qualities and forces from their magickal growth and advancement. These forces and qualities make up their Inner Nature and are reflected in Their Auras. There is a science that is based upon the interplay of these forces, and others, on humankind. It is called Astrology. It is based upon many factors and is a very real science. What you are going to do is study the Inner Nature of each Planetary and Lunar Night Spirit, and then the Auric effect of that Night Spirit, on you, when it plays upon you (or others) the strongest. You will begin with the Night Spirit Mercury. Perhaps, it is here, that I should interject this bit of information. The names of the Lunar and Planetary Night Spirits are prefixed with the word Night God or Goddess. This is so, whenever you refer to them as Magickal Beings in speech, or addressing them in meditation. Although each Lunar and Planetary Spirit contains a Yin and Yang side their is one aspect that is predominate just as there is in you. Let's return now to the Night God Mercury.

Mercury has always been represented as the winged god messenger. You can, indeed, think of Mercury as the Winged Night Spirit, in the form of a beautiful Silver Hawk. The Hawk is the symbol of great magickal attainment, and the Night God Mercury has reached those lofty heights of the Planetary Oversoul. His very core of Being is filled with Night Energy. His Presence is filled with Oversoul Strength and the Night Power. Yet, His Nature is that of a very warm Being. He stands as the Rock of the Oversoul upon whom all may build their lives in confidence. He is sure of His Place in the Drama of Life. His Aura radiates with the Power of the Night Command and Direction. Thus, He fills your life with Night Direction when you are open to His Influence. When you are attuned to His Presence and Power, you are filled with the Presence of Oversoul. You find inner freedom and independence in yourself as the Magickal Hawk. You find yourself as a seeker of Wisdom, wherever It may be. His Presence quickens your mental faculties and gives you good memory. You enjoy the pursuit of Wisdom in reading and writing. His Aura makes you perceptive, studious, and logical. You can be a strong leader

in life. This is the Power of the Night God Mercury in your life. From the Night Spirit Mercury, you travel to visit with the Night Goddess Venus.

Venus is a Night Planetary Goddess who is very Warm, Vibrant, and Alive with the Night Energy. She is filled with the Energy of the Oversoul and the Night Spirit, which She radiates in Her Aura to all beings. If you were to visualize Her Presence, you would see Her attired in a flowing, red gown. She has beautiful green eyes, skin that is pale and soft, and Her hair is long, flowing, and red in color. You find Her a bit Reserved and Mysterious in Nature. She is filled with the deepest of Compassion for others. You know Her as the Morning Star, the last to say good-bye. When you bathe in the Presence of Her Aura, your Inner Nature becomes filled with Energy. She fills you with a vibrancy and warmth for life. She gives to you an artistic nature and an energy for beauty, art, and music. You become a part of Her Compassion for all of life. You enjoy being with other people and spreading harmony, peace, and happiness among them. This is the Power of the Goddess Venus in your life. From here, you move to the next Goddess, and One whom you call Mother, the Earth.

The Presence of Mother Earth is a very Commanding One. She has a very strong sense of Direction and Purpose in Her Life. Yet, you find Her a very Compassionate and Loving Creature. If you could envision Her Presence, you would find Her arrayed in a beautiful, emerald green gown and shimmering in the Glory of the Night Spirit's Light. She is a very Magickal and Elegant Lady. She is very much concerned with life and nature. When filled with the Presence of Her Nature, you, too, become filled with a concern for life and nature. You sense the great importance all life and nature plays in your world. You feel very earthy and strong in the ways of the Earth. You become a part of Her Direction and Purpose in Life. You become filled with Her Compassion and Concern for all things living. You know the feeling of true parenthood, just as She does for all of you. This is your Mother and Night Goddess, Earth. You won't have to go far to meet your next Lunar Night Goddess, the Moon.

She has been known as Diana, or Artemis, the Goddess of Light and the Moon. She has been recognized as the Goddess of Fertility. The Moon's Light comes from sun light but she reflects to the Earth only Yin Light. She is the Great Reflector of the Yin Light into your world. She is the Giant Mirror through which humankind can see their selves reflected. Thus, She is All-seeing of the wrong and harm that is done to the beautiful body of the Goddess Earth. As you meditate upon Her Presence, you see only the All-seeing Eye and the tears that are shed for humankind. The Goddess Diana is a very Compassionate and Loving Being, who has constantly seen the wrong and harm caused by humankind. Thus, She is filled with a Great Sadness over humankind and its doings. When you come strongly under Her Presence, you are filled with a restlessness and boundless energy to correct those wrongs. She has great control over your emotional nature and can raise in you the highest of qualities. She makes you sensitive and intuitive to all things around you. She fills you with great compassion. She gives you a receptive and imaginative mind. This is the outpouring of the Goddess Diana's Aura on you. Now, you are off to visit the Night God Mars.

Man has always envisioned the Night God Mars as a god of war. But the time has passed, when the Night God Mars may be referred to as such. The Night God Mars, as all the Planetary Night Spirits, is a Great Being of the Night Spirit and Energy. The problem lies with humankind itself. The Energies of Mars can either bring humankind to its Highest, or lowest Self, dependent on the Inner Nature of humankind. Thus, the Energies have always reacted adversely with the human aura and created a state of war in humankind. Where Mars was, before, symbolized as a Hawk, now, He shall be symbolized as a Swan. The Swan is a living symbol of the Oversoul in the Night Spirit. The Night God Mars is a Masculine Night Spirit who is Young and Energetic. He is Night Courage and Strength. He represents Victory in, and through, Peace. He is the Fighter and Defender of the Ways of the Night Spirit. He is a very Wise and Noble Night Spirit. He is a King in All Things. His Aura can raise the highest and noblest of qualities in humankind.

He fills you with a energy of liberty, freedom, and independence. He gives to you an Inner Nature of Night Strength and Courage. You become filled with inner purpose and direction. You are filled with His Night Energy and thus, are ambitious, aggressive, and straightforward in all things. You are given a good mind that makes you ingenious and inventive. You are filled with the Wisdom of the Night God Mars. When you are filled with His Night Energies, you must always be centered in your Oversoul. You must guard against a lack of patience and rashness. You must guard against an unruly temper. You must always be filled with the Night Energy and Light, and thus raise the Energies of the Night God Mars to their Highest in you. You leave the Night Spirit Mars, and move on to the Goddess Jupiter.

Perhaps this will upset many, but the Goddess Jupiter is predominately a Feminine Night Spirit. She does have strong Masculine overtones, but She is, nonetheless, a Feminine Night

Spirit. If you could envision Her Presence, you would see Her with very long, flowing, blond hair. She wears a very radiant dress of blue light. She is a very Magickal and Radiant Goddess. She is a virtual pool of Explosive Night Energy. She is always ready to go; to be; to do. She is filled with Night Liberty, Freedom, Justice, and the Eternal Night Balance. She is symbolized by a Blue Raven of Harmony and Peace. She is a very Refined and Elegant Being. She is very businesslike in all Her Ways. She brings to you this businesslike attitude.

She fills you with a very real sense of purpose and direction. She gives you strong convictions. She give to you an optimistic, confident, and determined attitude. When you have the Power of the Goddess Jupiter flowing through strongly, you are very sincere, courteous, pleasant, and noble person. You are a very refined individual. You value your freedom and independence very highly. This is the Power of the Goddess Jupiter. You leave Her to visit another of Her Sisters, the Goddess Saturn.

As you approach the Aura of the Goddess Saturn, you find Her Awesome, Powerful, and Creative. She is filled with Great Elegance and Grace. She is a very Mysterious the Goddess of the Night and Power. She is the Mistress of Time and Space. She is the Taskmaster for those who would enter the Path towards Night Consciousness. She wears the Silver Crown of the Oversoul, and holds it for all who attain to the Oversoul. She is a very Stern Goddess, who demands much from Her Sons and Daughters. Yet, She is filled with Great Compassion and Energy. Her Very Nature contains Night Tolerance, Patience, and Fortitude. She brings to all humankind the aspiration to attain unto the Oversoul.

If Saturn's Aura rules in you then you are very calm, grave, and serious in nature. You are one who is ready to face the trials and tests of life. You are ready for the great changes and upsets to come into your life. You are ready, because you are one who strives to become the Oversoul in all things. There is no greater goal and crown to be won, from the Hands of the Goddess Saturn.

You must take on the Goddess' Qualities of Tolerance, Patience, and Fortitude. You must be ready for the long, slow climb towards Night Consciousness, for indeed, with these Night Qualities inside yourself, you can not fail. These are the Powers of the Goddess Saturn, in the life of those who would be the Oversoul. Let's go onward and meet the Night God Uranus.

The Inner World of the Night God Uranus is one related to the technology of the world. He is a very Strong-willed Night God. He has a great feeling for the World of Technology. He is very thorough in all He undertakes. The Power of His Aura is very far reaching, and is felt strongly in the world today. He gives to those, who feel His Power, strong originality and independence of thought. His Power gives the genius and inventor of the world. The inventor is a lover of his freedom and independence. As with all geniuses and inventors, there is a peculiarity or strangeness that tends to set them apart from others. It makes them feel as if they are many years ahead of their time. The Night Spirit Uranus is still very much wrapped up in His Own Ways and Mysteries, and so it is with the next the Night God Neptune.

To look into the Inner Nature of the Night God Neptune is very much like looking into the depths of the oceans. His Inner Nature is extremely Deep and Vast. The Inner Depths of Neptune conceal many of the Ancient Mysteries that are still to be revealed to humankind. The Night God Neptune is a very Refined and Noble Planetary Night God. He is filled to the Depths with Night Strength and Power. He is symbolized by a Trident, with a Blazing Silver Light atop it.

He gives to you Inner Strength of Purpose and Direction. He knows who you are; why you are; and where you're going. He fills you with a sense of Destiny and Purpose in Life. His Aura fills you with His Night Strength. He gives to you an Energy for the Mysteries. He makes you intuitive and perceptive to the Night Force. To those in whom the Power of the Night God Neptune flows strongest, He gives the Energy of the Seas and Oceans. It is best, for this one, to live close to large bodies of water. This is the Power of the Night God Neptune. Your last stop is to visit the Night Goddess/God Pluto. In the Night God Pluto, the Forces of Masculinity and Femininity are in equal balance. The Night God is neither more feminine or more masculine, but finds a balance in both. In the Night God Pluto, you find the Knowledge of the Night. S/he is filled with Night Life, Light, and Speed. S/he is the Guardian of the Night Age. S/he is the Harbinger of the Age of the Eternal Night. S/he is the First One to see and understand the New Horizons that lie before humankind. S/he is symbolized by the Equilateral Triangle ablaze in Green Cold Fire. She is filled with a New Night Power for the Yin System and it is called Cold Fire. It represents a new form of Night Power and Strength, and when magickally invoked, feels both cool and warm. Its Power has yet to be fully understood and used in this world. The Night Goddess/God Pluto represents, in humankind, the dying of the material concerns and the birth of the magickal way of life. S/he will fill humankind with a new power and energy that will bring about new ways of life. If the Powers of the Night Goddess/God Pluto flow strongest in you, you will find yourself standing atop the Mountain of the Night God, holding

aloft the Blazing Night Energy of Your Own Divinity. In the Night Goddess/God Pluto, you find the New Human. This is the Human of the Night Age, the Aquarian Age, the return to a Magickal Way of Life.

You found that Dark Stars, Planets, and Moons are Conscious, Sentient Beings of the Night Power and Energy. You found that in some ways they differ as much as humans differ from each other. May you find in knowing the Planetary Night Goddess/Gods and the Goddess Diana, greater understanding about yourself, your future, and your relation to the Universe around you. You leave the Magickal-Material Universe of the Planetary and Lunar Goddess/Gods and enter into the Magickal Realm of the Night Teachers.

#### 43. The Night Guild

You will recall, for a moment, that in the beginning of the book, I stated then, while discussing the Night Teachers, that I would return to them later and go into greater depth and detail. Therefore, I have devoted this topic to the in-depth examination of the Night Teachers in their realm. I discussed earlier in the book, the realm in which they live.

You will remember that the Night Realm (Causal Realm) was the home of the Perfected Night Magician. This is the region of the Night Teachers, the Perfected Humankind. Yet, the Night Teachers also work and reside in the lower dimensions. You will recall that the Night Guild is the organization dedicated to the service of the Will of the Night Spirit. It is dedicated to using the Power, Wisdom, and Energy of the Night Spirit in whatever way is required to further promote that Will. The membership of the Night Guild is as vast and varied as the stars that make up the Universe. There are members that work in Realms and Spheres of Light and Energy far beyond your imagination. I spoke in the last topic, of those members who are the Night and Planetary Night Spirits. These are the Great Beings that are the Night Spirit and Life of the planets and suns of the Dark Sun system. There are even Magickal Beings who are on an even higher magickal level than these Great Ones. What you will become the most familiar with, and your interest lies with in this topic, are those Great Ones who are the Night Teachers.

The Night Teachers, as you will remember, are those members who work directly with the magickal evolution and progress of Earth and its inhabitants. What kind of Beings are they really? Well, they are in reality very much like you. They are like you because they have walked the same roads that you walk. Many have lived before on Earth facing the same trials and testings you face each day. They have lived many lives and finally overcome the cycle of life and death on Earth. They are free of all Earthly karma. They are the Elder Brothers and Sisters of Earth.

In the Night Guild are the Invisible Directors and Governors of the countries, states, provinces, and large cities on Earth. There is a Guild Member for each of these geographical regions, and a World Director over all of them and the planet. The World Director is Germain. His last incarnation on Earth was as the Comte de Sainte-Germain. There are many other offices held within the Invisible Government. I cannot give you their names nor regions that they rule over because they are too busy dealing with the world and its population and problems to actually teach. You should not call upon the World Director or any of his hierarchy. They serve only the indwelling Night Presence of the Planet and would find any interruption or disturbance troubling. What does concern you is a branch of the Invisible Government that does deal with you directly. This is the office of the World Teacher.

The office of World Teacher is currently held by the Night Teacher Merlin. It is His task to plan the magickal education of the inhabitants of Earth. If it is necessary to establish a new teaching then one of their own members is selected to establish it. The World Teacher may elect to go into the world or may select an apprentice to go. This is indeed a great honor for the apprentice so selected. The members of the Night Guild who work under the direction of the World Teacher are the Night Teachers. You will recall that the Night Teachers deal directly with those who have traveled far enough on the Night Road and truly want to become Night Magicians. Let's have a quick review of the relationship between the Teacher and apprentice. You will remember that the initial contact between yourself and the Teacher is very minimal. This contact only comes about when you have been accepted on the road of Night Magick. In time, and with self-perseverance, the relationship between yourself and the Night Teacher deepens, until you become the Teacher's apprentice. Then you come under Her/His direct supervision and instruction. You become as Mother/Father and Daughter/Son. Yet, you ask yourself the same question, who is your Night Teacher?

To answer this questions, leads you to the Seven Forces of Life. The Seven Forces of Life are the seven basic types of forces, characteristics, and vibrations that can be found in life. There are seven basic types of people, and within their Inner Nature, these Seven Forces can be seen at work. For each type of person, there is one of the Forces that strongly predominates over the

others. The Seven Forces of Life are the seven predominate ways that a person may find expression in life. In you, there is a predominate Force and characteristic that makes up your Inner Nature, and it is through expression of this trait in life, that you find satisfaction and happiness. You would even find this true for the Night Teachers. They find predominate expression through one of the Seven Forces of Life. The Night Teachers have achieved, though, perfection and mastery in each of the Seven Forces, and have the seven basic characteristics balanced evenly within their Inner Nature. Yet you will find that One Force and characteristic is predominate over the others. It is from this Dominant Force that the Night Teachers choose Their students and apprentices. The Night Teacher chooses Their apprentice based upon like vibration. The Teacher and apprentice can be found traveling the same road of expression in life. The Teacher and apprentice are on One of the Seven Forces of Life. This is the predominate Force and drive of their lives. As I said earlier, there is a Night Teacher who is the Channel and Focus for each of the Seven Forces. You will find in Her/Him the Supreme Perfection and Expression of the Force. They are the Gateway for the Force from out of the Infinite, into the finite. We will call Her/Him the "Keeper of the Force", and shorten it to "Keeper". There are seven Keepers, and they are each Teachers of apprentices. There are also many Teachers who do not function as Keepers, but nonetheless, receive apprentices based upon the Force predominate in both their lives. The real key, in the selection of the apprentice, is harmony between both the Teacher and the student. Let's examine the Seven Forces of Life, and their Keepers, and then meet a few other Teachers of the Night Realm. You will begin, then, with the First Force.

The First Force is the Will and Power of the Night Spirit. You find it, exemplified and exalted, in the personage of its Keeper, Asmodeus. The Keeper Asmodeus is a Night Teacher in whom flows the True Power of the Night Spirit, under the Direction of the Magickal Will. He is a stern but kindly Teacher, asking only the very best from His apprentices. If He were to appear, in person, to an apprentice, He would appear in an Indian attire, that is, turban and robe complete. To be His apprentice will require the strongest of will to persevere through all trials and testings. The apprentice, in whom the First Force dominates, is a self-ruler. The apprentice prefers to have self-rule and independence over their life. The worst thing, the apprentice feels could happen is to have to work for another. This would be pure misery. They are the kind of individual, who takes the initiative and sets the course. They are of strong will and the ruler in life. They will make the queen/king, statesperson, or governor of the physical world. They will seek freedom through mastery over self and the world around them. This is the way of the Teachers and apprentices of the First Force of Night Power and Will.

The Second Force is the Wisdom of the Night Spirit. It finds a special place in the Being of its Keeper, Kali. In appearance, to Her apprentices, She appears as an Indian (India). She is a very kind and loving Teacher. She helps bring to Her students, the perfect example of Night Consciousness. As a Magickal Teacher, She tries to help Her students grow in magick and expand their Inner Vision, so that they can see things as She sees them, and understand things as She understands them, and above all, to have the Wisdom of the Night Spirit to respond to things as She would respond to them. Her expressed desire is to see Her apprentices take flight, on their own, into the Night Realm, and soar as the Great Magickal Owl.

The apprentice of the Second Force is the student of life. They are the kind of person who will learn by studying all of life around them. They will gain their freedom from life and death on Earth, by observing and learning from all that goes on around them. This is how they will gain illumination and enlightenment, and soar into the Night Realm. They are the philosopher and poet. These are the Teachers and apprentices of the Second Force of Night Wisdom.

The Third Force is the Energy of the Night Spirit. There is no one, who could better embody this Force, then its Keeper, Baal. As a Magickal Teacher, He seeks to impart to His apprentices, an Energy that is unknown in the world. An Energy that is purely and wholly of the Night Spirit. He teaches of an Energy that is totally impartial and a balm to heal all wounds. His guidance sets the apprentice free of any limitations. He teaches the apprentice to be free of dependance upon another's judgment, and above all, another's will.

The apprentice is the true disciple of the Night. The apprentice gives their all in energy to the Night. They see no differences in the races of humankind but know them all as the Children of the Night Spirit. They are totally devoted to bringing all the world back under the Night Spirit. To returning the world back to Yin. This is the way of the Teachers and apprentices in the Third Force of Night Energy.

The Fourth Force is the crossroad of the Night Forces of Life. You have seen that the first Three Forces, and the way that they are expressed in life, are wholly that of the Night Spirit. They have their center of expression in the Magickal. As you will see shortly, the last three have

their expression and unfoldment on the material plane. The Fourth Force is, therefore, referred to as the Crossroad of the Night Forces. It is the Force of Balance, Dignity, and Purity. This Force finds its expression through the Mighty Keeper, Lilith. She is a very stern Teacher, but at the same time, has a very warm and loving sense of humor. She is very demanding of Her apprentices to always do their best, and pushes them hard in all they do. Under Her tutelage, the apprentice cannot fail but to grow magickally. Her Presence is very powerful and noble, and once She visits Her apprentices, they will never forget Her.

The apprentice of the Fourth Force always tries to achieve balance in all they undertake. They are the excellent arbitrator. They have the wonderful ability to see all the sides of an issue. The only problem, here, is that the apprentice can be faced with indecision because of this very ability. Therefore, it is very necessary for the apprentice, no matter the Life Force they're on, to develop all of the Forces to the greatest degree of perfection and balance possible. The apprentice seeks freedom through the perfection and purity of their Inner Nature and the outer world. It is their way, to achieve perfection, through the balance of both the magickal and physical worlds. This is the way of the Teachers and apprentices in the Fourth Force of Night Balance, Dignity, and Purity.

The Fifth Force is that of Knowledge. The Keeper of the Fifth Force is Dagon. This Force finds itself in great expression throughout the world. The Keeper Dagon instructs the apprentice in the ways of knowledge that are to be found in the deep study of the ways and laws of nature. He teaches that it is through the study of the Earth, and the learning and understanding of its concealed knowledge, that you as an apprentice can find your Inner Freedom. The Keeper Dagon is a mighty Teacher and whose ways follow very closely to those of Nature. If you want to know more about His Nature, then you must study that of the Earth's.

The apprentice of the Fifth Force seeks to find knowledge in the world. The problem is that many students become lost in the seeming rigidity of Earth science. The ordinary person of this Force is your scientist of today. But, the apprentices of this Force must go beyond what seems the scientific knowledge of today. They must study the ways of the Earth and all of nature, and from that study will come their Inner Freedom and Night Consciousness. This is the way of the Fifth Force and its Teachers and apprentices.

The Sixth Force is the return to the Way of Energy. The Sixth Force is that of Devotion to the Night Spirit. This is a very powerful Force and is embodied in its Keeper, Lucifer. The Keeper Lucifer teaches the Force of Devotion to His apprentices. He brings into their being the true and burning feeling of Devotion to the Night Spirit. He conveys, into their world of feeling, the devotion necessary to complete the journey to their Oversoul. He brings, to their Inner Vision, the energy and power that is behind everything in the world of nature and form. He shows them the power and energy that is behind all things, which is the Night Spirit. The Keeper Lucifer is a very Radiant and Magnificent Being. He is filled with an Inner Yin Light and Radiance that comes from the Exalted Devotion found within Him. He is a very patient Teacher as are all the Teachers of the Night. The Keeper of the Sixth Force has a true understanding of all His apprentices.

The devotion practiced by the apprentices allow them to find happiness in all that happens to them in life. They except all that comes into their world knowing that, whether it seems good or bad at the time, that it is all for their magickal growth. They have true belief and trust in the Night Spirit. They know that all their needs will be met through the agency of the Night Spirit. This is the Sixth Force of Devotion to the Night Spirit and its Teachers and apprentices.

The Seventh Force is founded in creativeness through the Night Spirit. The Seventh Force is the Beauty and Action of the Night Spirit. This Force is found in rare and exalted form in its Keeper, Hecate. The Keeper Hecate imparts to Her apprentices the Energy and Beauty that is found in all of the Night Spirit's Creation. She teaches them how to create using the Power and Will of the Night Spirit. She makes of them Magickal Channels for the Creative Power of the Night Spirit to flow through. She shows them that within all of the Night Spirit's Creation, flows Its Night Spirit, Beauty, Power, Will, and Action. She is a very beautiful and wise Teacher. She finds in all of Her apprentices the Magickal Beauty and Action being expressed. She helps all Her apprentices to find within them the Touch of the Magickal Artist.

You see, then, the type of apprentices found under the Seventh Force of Beauty and Action in the Night Spirit. The apprentices of the Seventh Force are very sensitive and refined individuals. They are the artists and artisans of life. Through them flows the Creative Power and Will of the Night Spirit, and by the action of their steady minds, feelings, and hands, which are in tune to this Power, come the rare forms of creativity to the world. The apprentices truly worship the Night Spirit in nature. They find in the power and beauty of nature, their Inner Self. There is no greater communion that can be found by them, then that within the Night Spirit found in nature. The apprentices are able to look upon the beauty and

power of a sunset over the ocean, a wooded landscape, or mountainous scene, and feel, absorb, and become that very power and beauty. They can even go further, by expressing that very essence of the Night Spirit in painting, sculpturing, composing, writing, or craftsmanship. The apprentices, through their talents, can bring to others the power and beauty they feel which is captured in a work of art. The Seventh Force has also been said to find expression in the rite or ceremony.

It doesn't matter whether that rite be of a magickal nature, or that of the coronation of a Queen/King, all rites are rooted in the Seventh Force of Beauty and Action of the Night Spirit. For example, let's look at any rite that can be found in this book. What do you see?

In each rite, you find that all the acts in combination with each other form a true creation of art and beauty. The acts, gestures, and movements of the Night Magicians officiating and participating are very graceful and add to the overall picture being painted. You have incense, candles, altar cloth, background draperies perhaps, pictures of your favorite Teachers, and music in the background. You then have the majestic and beautiful words of the invocation added to the whole. The sum of all these different things add up to a beautiful and majestic work of creation. Thus, you find many apprentices who are of the Seventh Force involved in rites. They obtain to great magickal heights through the instrument of the rite, whether they are the participant or officiant. This is the Seventh Force of Beauty and Action of the Night Spirit and its Teachers and apprentices. You have now examined the Seven Forces of Life and the Keeper of each of those Forces. Let's look, for a moment, at a few of the Night Teachers not yet mentioned.

Of the First Force we have Azazel, Leviathan, Santanas, and Amon. Of the Second Force we have Lucifuge Rofocale, Belial, and Azael.

Of the Third Force we have Endor, Abraxas, and Balan. Of the Fourth Force we have Astaroth, Nisroch, and Bensozia. Of the Fifth Force we have Agares, John Dee, Bifrons, Belphegor, and Alocer. Of the Sixth Force we have Moloch, Astartes, and Marie Laveau. Of the Seventh Force we have Aleister Crowley, Armida, Cagliostro, Baphomet, and Eliphas Levi.

This is only a sampling of the many Night Teachers of the Seven Night Forces. If any of these names happen to appeal to you in that special inner way then perhaps they are your Teacher. Or you may have one who is not listed here. Then through meditation, Astral or Mental Projection, or in some other manner you will come to know your Night Teacher. I assure you that when the time is right you will become an apprentice of a Night Teacher. Remember, to always study and work with the Night Teachers. You must always include them in the ways and activities of your life. You are a member of the Night Guild, when you have entered upon the Night Road and aid the Night Teachers in the magickal evolution of life on Earth. To aid the Night Teachers you must learn to use the Night Powers.

#### 44. Night Powers

Inherent within you lie the dormant Powers of the Oversoul and Creation. You can actualize these Powers when you have realized the Oversoul within you. I intend to discuss some of the Powers of the Oversoul that are at your disposal. Some of the Powers that you will discover are levitation, vibrational change, invisibility, weather control, and the list goes on. Some of these Powers may already seem incredible to you, but really they are just the outpouring of the Oversoul's Power through you, when you live in Its Consciousness and by Its Will. All the things that you have been studying and practicing have been preparing you for this day when you would put these Powers and Knowledge into use. When you use these Powers, you must always use them under the Direction of your Oversoul. If you are ready to use these Powers of the Oversoul then let's begin with the first Power of Unlimited Thought Control.

This may not sound like a specific Power but, indeed, it is. This is a very special concept of awareness that will unleash for you Powers untold. It is virtually the key to the Universe of Life. If you will stop reading for a moment, and look around the room, do you note anything out of the ordinary? For most the answer would be No. Yet, under the special awareness you are going to acquire the room around you is a very special place as is all creation. The room is the way it is because your thoughts keep it just the way you have always pictured it. You have become very conditioned in life to see material things as concrete and solid. The chair is a chair and nothing will change that, you think! But let's stop again and see what really a chair is.

The chair is an aggregate or collection of molecules which are very dense and specifically arranged to form the chair. The chair has wood, cloth, and metal molecules that make up its physical structure. Suppose now, that a very hot fire came along and destroyed the chair, what has really happened to the chair? Well, the fire so accelerated the molecules and released the energy that binds all the molecules together, that it has transformed some of the molecules to ash and the others have been set free into the atmosphere. They are now particles, so widely

scattered, that they can no longer be seen in the form of a chair. Is there anything else that could do this to the chair? Yes indeed, your very thoughts could do the same to the molecules of the chair. This is that very special state of awareness that I was discussing earlier. Your thoughts help chain the molecules together to form what you think of as a chair. You see, feel, and know that this is a chair and that is all it is. But if you use your Oversoul Awareness and Thought, you can release the energy that binds the molecules of the chair into its physical form, and then it will no longer be a chair. You, then, can release the molecules back into the atmosphere, remold the molecules into some other form, or rebind them into its original form. There is a much greater use of the First Power. You could use this Power on your own physical structure. Any ideas on what would happen? Remember, that your physical body is just a repository for your emotions and consciousness. You are not the body, but Pure Oversoul Awareness and Thought. If you release the thoughts that bind the physical body into its material form, then it would become formless. Yet your consciousness has complete control of all the physical molecules. You would be aware of your body as a million pinpoints of light. If you desire to go anywhere, at anytime, all you have to do is think of that time and place and you would be there. To regain your material form, all you have to do is release the thought that unleashed the binding power of the molecules. This is perhaps the most important concept you will ever learn. It is the essence of many of the other Powers that you will learn. The concept, therefore, bears repeating.

It is your thoughts that literally bind you to limitation and the material world. If you unleash the thoughts that bind your physical structure, or anything in your world, you become formless and free of any physical restrictions. Through this Power, you will have total control over your physical form or any material thing. If you unleash the material thoughts that bind you to anything, and replace it with the Oversoul Thought, then you become unlimited and free.

The Second Power is like the first, and it is Vibrational Control over all that is. Imagine for a moment that you have been caught in a building that is on fire and you cannot get out, what are you going to do? You are going to use the Second Power of Vibrational Control and walk through the fire unharmed. That's right! You are going to walk right through the fire, and it will never hurt you. It really is not so incredible as it may seem. The fire has a high vibrational rate and energy. The molecules around you are in a very high state of agitation and are combining with oxygen, giving off heat, flame, and light. If you can raise the vibrational rate of your physical body to a very high rate, higher than that of the fire, through the Oversoul Awareness and Thought, then you will go unharmed by the fire. You can do this not only for your physical body but for anything you desire to change the vibrational rate of. Further, you not only can raise the vibrational rate but you can also lower the rate of vibration in all things.

This leads you into the Third Power of Invisibility. The first thing that comes to your mind, when you think of invisibility, is the legends of the invisible man. It is true, though, that you can become invisible. Not only can you become invisible, but you can create invisibility in anything. There are two ways of doing this, and the first uses the power just discussed of vibrational control.

If you raise the vibrational rate of the entity high enough, the molecules will vibrate at such an extremely high rate that light will simply pass through them and, so, you have invisibility. It is only when light can fall on a sufficiently dense article, and be reflected off of it, that it can be seen. This is the first type of invisibility. The second revolves around the absence of thought. The second type will allow you to remain physically solid, yet invisible to others. When you emit thought from your mind, you have learned that this is an energy which all are sensitive to. It is your thoughts that make you visible to others. So to achieve invisibility, you must erect a shield that completely encloses you and that will not permit any thought energy to escape. You do this by visualizing the Oversoul Energy completely surrounding and inclosing you. You then project, into this Oversoul Energy Screen, with Oversoul Thought, the Power that all your thoughts will remain enclosed within this capsule, and so you will be invisible. For a moment, let's change pace and look at something that may be causing many of you some trouble, and that is what I mean by the Oversoul Awareness, Thought, Energy, and other terms used in relation to the Oversoul.

If you are to put this topic to successful use in your life, then you must understand something very basic to Night Magick. You are the Oversoul! If you can't understand this very simple concept, then you should go back and read topics six and seven. For it is only when you truly know that you are the Oversoul in Power, Energy, and Consciousness, that you will accomplish anything in this current topic. When I speak of Oversoul Awareness, you know yourself as the Oversoul in Consciousness and Power. You know, that you have the full use of Its

Consciousness and Power for it is your consciousness and power. There is no difference, or separation, between yourself and the Oversoul. You are One in All Things. Study, learn, and know this to the Inner Depths of Your Being and you have mastered all.

Let's resume, now, with the Fourth Power of Multiple Being. The concept of this may seem difficult, but study and try to follow along. When I speak of multiple being, I speak of having your physical presence in more than one place, at the same time. The key word, here, is physical. You can do this in several ways. To begin with, you can separate your Astral Body, from your physical form, and retain consciousness in both. Then, you can lower the vibrational rate of the Astral Body till it can be seen and touched. To be in even more places, you can build a copy of your physical form, out of the Oversoul Energy, and again condense and lower the Energy Form until it can be seen and felt. Then, you will place your consciousness in control of it, and use it as you would use your own physical body. There is no limit to the number of the Oversoul Energy forms you can make. You must keep control over each form and sustain it with your Oversoul Energy and Consciousness. Either you maintain complete Oversoul Control and Consciousness over each form, or they will return to the Eternal Darkness. The Fifth Power is that of Levitation. You know the physical law on Earth that "opposites attract". You have also seen the experiment whereby you take two magnets and place the like ends, that is either both North or South ends of the magnets, facing each other, they will repel each other. The Earth has a certain polarity, and you have a certain polarity, which keep you both together. If you can reverse your polarity such that it is the same as the Earth, then you will be repelled by the Earth and so, levitate above it. To accomplish this requires a combination of Night Breathing and the drawing upon, and application of the Earth's Energy around and through your body. There is an easier way of doing levitation. If you use the Power of Vibrational Control and slowly raise the vibrational rate of the molecules of your body, the body will become like the sky. The body will become very light and float above the Earth. You can direct your movement and height by Oversoul Thought. Remember though, that the body is still subject to lack of oxygen and the cold of extreme heights. This is Levitation.

The Sixth Power is that of Weather Control. In order to understand how to control the weather, you must understand the Powers behind the weather. These Powers have been known by some as Nature Souls, Elves, Fairies, or Elementals. They are in almost all legends of every country in the world. They are behind everything that is in Mother Earth's Realm. There are Nature Souls of the Earth, ranging from small ones over the flowers and plants to those Great and powerful ones over the mountains. There are Nature Souls over the waters, again ranging from the small ones of brooks to the great Kings and Queens of the Oceans. There are those who are responsible over the Magickal Energies of the Earth and the elements of fire. The ones who are responsible for your weather can be found in charge of the air. There are elementals who guide the rains. The great ones are responsible for the great winds and their directions. It is they, in combination with each other, that create the various weather patterns. If you are going to control the weather, then you must solicit the help of the air Nature Souls. The secret to gaining the aid of the Air Spirits and all Spirits is to know that they obey the Oversoul. Thus, when you ask for a specific weather condition, you must do so as the Oversoul on Earth. Remember, that you are responsible for whatever you ask for. If you ask for sunny and bright days, then that is what you will get, but if rain was originally planned, then you must remember to set aside a period for this to occur, too. If you want a day or two of good weather then fine, but then you should turn over the controls of the weather back to Mother Earth and the Air Spirits, or you will cause grave harm that you will be responsible for.

The Seventh Power is that of Knowing the essence of all things with or without form. This is a very important Power, or concept, that will unfold for you many Powers that lie within your Oversoul Being. The first essential key to achieving this Power is the mastery of meditation. In meditation, you began learning to concentrate on a particular subject and its true essence. You tried to come to know a particular subject as best as you could. You wanted to learn its very nature and feel that nature within you. Now you are going to take this concept or Power to its Nth degree. For example, you are going to examine a tree. You will begin by meditating on the tree. You will study its outer form and the way it moves and behaves, but then you are going to go much farther. You are going to go on and feel what it is to be a tree. You are going to come to know, and feel yourself as a tree. You will feel the wind blowing through your limbs and leaves. To feel the warm sun as it shines upon you and gives you new life. To feel the Earth below you and your roots sunk deep into it, pulling up water and nourishment to help you grow. To go back into your memories and remember what it was like to be a seedling, and the first feel of the sun and rain upon your newly risen face. You are going to become the Tree in all its eternal essence of life. There will be nothing that you will not know about the Tree. You will

come to know its beginning and ending. You will come to know, and be, the sum of the Tree. You will go on and develop this Power not only for animate things, but inanimate objects. Then, you will also develop it for things without form, such as the sky and energy. If you achieve all of this, then you are ready to attempt the Eighth Power of Great Personal Strength. Here, you are going to activate the Seventh Power on the great beings of strength. This would include the elephant, whale, and bear. You are going to become all that they are, but you will specifically come to know them for their great personal strength. Then, you are going to absorb that physical power within your own being. If you have done this correctly and completely, you will have the physical power of these animals as long as you remain under the Seventh Power.

This also gives you the Ninth Power of Great Personal Speed. If you will use the seventh Power on the deer, elk, and gazelle, you will again become all they are in personal speed. You will be able to move across land with their terrific speed. There are so many things that you can use the Seventh Power for, that will bring to you added knowledge and wisdom.

If you study, intensely, the World of Form and its relation in Time and Space, you will find that you can move along its line of history, either forward or backward. You know that time is only a relative thing. You have experienced, in Astral and Mental Projection, that what seemed only a few moments in those realms actually was hours here on Earth. If you truly come to know Creation, Time, and Space as the Oversoul sees them, then you will be able to know both the past and future. You must become their essence. If you study the essence of another person, and become all that s/he is in essence, then you will know all there is to know of her/him. The very essence of any person is found in the Oversoul.

If you study the Essence of your own Oversoul, it would be the same as studying the person in question. For in your own Oversoul, is the Oversoul of the person, and within the Oversoul of the person is locked all that s/he was, is, and ever will be. If you study your own Eternal Essence, you will come to know many things. Your Eternal Essence can reveal to you your past lives. It can unfold for you why you came down here. By studying why you came here, and the things that you must clear up, you can come to know the time of your own passing from this Earth. By studying the Eternal Essence of your Oversoul, with the application of the Seventh Power, there is nothing that you will not know. All the Powers of the Oversoul will become yours, when you have become the total essence of that which you study, the Eternal Essence. There will be no other Powers to search for, since you will have become the Power Itself. Yet there will always be the unveiling and unfolding of the Powers of the Oversoul within you as you climb towards the Eternal Night. In addition to learning and using the Night Powers you must also learn to use the Night Flames.

#### 45. Night Flames

And the Night Flames blazed before the Living Throne of the Eternal Darkness, who are a part of Its Living Night Spirit, and by Its Will the Flames went forth into formless matter and there was Creation.

These are the Night Flames that you are about to study and use. As the Night Flames are a part of the Eternal Night, so they are a part of your Oversoul. As with the Night Powers, when you live in the Consciousness and Will of your Oversoul, so you too may use and create with the Night Flames. You are going to study the general nature and use of the Night Flames, and then examine each Night Flame individually. Finally, I will discuss how you can invoke the Night Flames and use them in your world. If you are ready, let's begin your general instruction of the Night Flames.

The Night Flames you will be studying are the Black, Violet, Blue, Green, Yellow, Orange, Red, Silver, and Rainbow Flames. You may have noticed right away that the majority of the Night Flames are named after a type of color. If you will review some information about colors, for a moment, you will see the difference.

You will remember that light is a type of energy. Colors were a product of light. The energy of colors was of a passive nature, and was effective by inducing a sympathetic reaction on what they were used. Night Flames have their origin in the Eternal Darkness. You will find that the use of the Night Flames is a very active process. The Night Flames are very active energies, which cause a change to take place according to the nature of the Night Flame. The Night Flames are effective in changing people and the world. There are many other uses for the Night Flames, and their discussion will be reserved to the study of each individual Night Flame. Each Night Flame has its particular properties and uses. Therefore, let's begin by studying the first Night Flame, the Black Flame.

The Black Flame of the Oversoul brings into the world the Purity and Perfection of the Night. If you wish to create the conditions of purity and perfection in a person or world condition, you can do so with this Flame. For example, if you find that there is a state of imperfection

existing in something or someone, that needs help in being erased, this would be the Flame to use. If you find a Yang condition or person using the Yang energy then this Flame will change the balance to the Night. By using this Flame you can maintain the Eternal Night Balance. This is the Black Flame.

The second is the Violet Flame of Transmutation. The Violet Flame is the Flame of Transmutation or Change. The Violet Flame transmutes Yang energy back into Pure Night Energy. If you look at yourself, for example, what kind of person is it you see at the end of the day? You find a person who has been saturated in the Yang energy of the world. People and conditions have constantly, throughout the day, been filling your world with harmful energy. You feel irritable, nervous, angry, run-down, and a host of other Yang conditions. The Violet Flame can change all this. You can apply this energy to your own world, or to those of others, and completely transmute the Yang energy into Yin. You will restore your Night Self and feel a true sense of buoyancy and upliftment. By using this Violet Flame, on yourself, you will be able to have a greater flow of the Oversoul Energy through you. You will have eliminated the energy which blocks the natural flow of the Oversoul Energy into your world. It is good to use this Violet Flame first, before using any of the other Night Flames. Use this Flame, always in conjunction with the Night Pillar. This is the Violet Flame.

The next Night Flame is the Blue Flame. The Blue Flame creates harmony and peace in all people and conditions. If there is any lack of harmony or peace, either in a person or condition, then you can use the Blue Flame to change all that. You could use the Blue Flame on unhappy marriages. You could use it on unhappy business partners or between unhappy firms. The uses are only limited by the extent of your imagination. Remember though, that the use of the Blue Flame may not be the only Flame needed in a situation to bring about lasting change. One or more Flames, used in conjunction with each other, may be necessary to cure all the problems and create a final and lasting change. This is the Blue Flame.

The fourth Night Flame is the Green Flame. The Green Flame is the Flame of Healing. You will use it extensively in the Healing Topic that soon follows. It is the way of the Oversoul Healing. It brings about the healing of all people and conditions. The healing of people is easy for you to understand, but what is the healing of conditions? There are many conditions which need the healing power of the Green Flame. The Green Flame can heal the broken heart. It doesn't matter whether its broken through the loss of a love one through transition into the next world, or an unhappy love affair. The Green Flame can heal the pain or sorrow of a nation over some unhappy event. The Green Flame not only mends the body but also the heart. This is the Green Flame of Healing.

The fifth is the Yellow Flame of Wisdom and Intelligence. The Yellow Flame of Wisdom and Intelligence is a very powerful energy. It can bring to you the Wisdom necessary to see through a decision that has to be made. The application of the Yellow Flame can raise your Magickal Consciousness to the highest of heights so that you may perceive Magickal Knowledge. A person cannot lie under the Power of the Yellow Flame. The Yellow Flame can increase the power of your intellect and improve your memory. This is the Yellow Flame.

The sixth Night Flame that you will study is the Orange Flame. The Orange Flame produces energy into the substance it is used on. If you need an energy pickup this is a good Flame. If a situation is moving slowly in your life then use the Orange Flame. The Orange Flame is heavy with Yang energy so be careful and not get burnt by using it.

The seventh Night Flame is the Red Flame. The Red Flame is an intense form of the Orange Flame. You will have to be careful in its use for it can cause extreme nervousness and irritability if used too much. The Red Flame can remove depressing situations or emotions. The Red Flame can speed up the process of healing in the human body.

The eighth Night Flame is the Silver Flame. The Silver Flame will purify the subconscious world. It will keep the subconscious in the Yin Flow. The Silver Flame is good for counteracting too much Yang Energy. The Silver Flame is good for healing sunburn or if your ever burnt by Yang Energy.

The ninth and final Night Flame is the Rainbow Flame. The Rainbow Flame does not really exist in Creation of its own. It is a composite of all the Flames together. The Rainbow Flame is created by you acting as the Oversoul on Earth. It is through your Power and Will as the Oversoul on Earth, acting as the Creator, that you bring the Rainbow Flame into the world. The use of this Flame should be obvious. The Flame is something of a Universal Cure-all. If you are in doubt about which Flame to use, or the situation seems to require a majority of all the Flames together, the Rainbow Flame is the answer. It will require your all to hold all the Flames together in order that they act as the Rainbow Flame. It will require the Night Magician, in Night Consciousness, to create, hold, and use the Rainbow Flame on Earth. You must remember then, that because this Flame does not exist of its own, that it may have less

power than the other Night Flames depending on you.

This is all the Night Flames that I will present in this topic. There are more but their use in the world is restricted. I have discussed the Night Flames in general, and individually, now it is time to teach you how to invoke and wield them.

Before you ever use the Night Flames, you should give very careful consideration as to exactly what is the right type of Night Flame necessary to do the job. The Night Flames must be invoked through the Presence of the Oversoul. The Oversoul is the channel through which the Night Flames pass. Therefore, you must be in the highest state of Night Consciousness possible in order to invoke these Flames into the material world. You should be prepared bodily, emotionally, and mentally as you would for anything you do in Night Magick. You must be prepared magickally, by reaching the greatest state of Oneness with your Oversoul. The quality and quantity of the individual Night Flame you wish to invoke into this world, is based directly on your self-preparation. As you are able to reach farther and higher into Night Consciousness, so will the quantity and strength of the Night Flame increase. You must invoke and use the Night Flames often, if they are to achieve the desired results. Now, let's get down to the specifics on how to invoke the Night Flames.

I will use the invoking of the Black Flame as an example. The invoking of the other Night Flames is similar, and requires the same basic procedures as outlined here. To begin with, you need to be in the highest state of Night Consciousness possible. Thus, you will begin with a period of meditation on your Oversoul. When you are ready, redirect the focus of your meditation from your Oversoul to the Black Flame. When you feel the highest of heights, in Night Consciousness, and have come to know the Black Flame of Purity and Perfection of the Oversoul, then you are ready to begin the invocation or invoking of the Flame. You should have already prepared your Magician's Study and your Night Altar. Standing before the Night Altar, you begin by seeing yourself as the Oversoul on Earth and robed in blazing Yin Energy. You invoke the Great Black Flame by saying:

"By the Presence of the Oversoul within me I am invoking the Great Black Flame of the Oversoul's Purity and Perfection through me. I AM seeing this Black Flame descending from above and filling my being with Its Essence and Power. I AM then placing it here before me on the Altar of the Night, there to collect and concentrate into a blazing Night Black Flame. Now, oh blazing Night Black Flame, I AM commanding thee by the Power of the Presence of the Oversoul in me, to obey my Will as the Oversoul on Earth."

This is your invocation through which you invoke or draw into your world the Black Flame. Invocations for the other Night Flames are found in Appendix A. Thus, you should have envisioned the blazing Black Flame, descending out of the Oversoul and into your mortal form. Then, you should have directed the Black Flame through your heart Night Center and out onto the Night Altar. There, you collect and intensify Its Presence into a blazing Black Flame Star. Once you have the sufficient amount of Black Flame to do the task at hand (you'll know how much by Oversoul Direction), you then must visualize the task to be accomplished. You then direct the Black Flame with your Oversoul Will to where you want the action of it to take place. Then, you will go on to visualize the Black Flame Action taking place and see and know that it has happened. Then you give thanks to your Oversoul. This is the way you invoke the Black Flame and all other Night Flames.

I hope you are not ready to stop here in the unfoldment of your Oversoul Powers, Flames, and Causal Body. Your next subject is directed at the unfoldment of all these, into Night Consciousness.

#### 46. Night Rites

The Night Rites are defined as any exercises or practices which ultimately gain the freedom of the Soul from imperfection and the cycle of death and rebirth into the material world. They are exercises in becoming the Yin Light of the Night Spirit. They are practices that will eventually lead you into Magickal Perfection. There are four Night Rites that will be introduced here. They are, in order of discussion, the Dark Sun Meditation, the Inner Cavern of the Dark Sun, the Night Energy Beam, and the Magician's Night Body. I will begin this discussion with the Dark Sun Meditation if you are ready.

In the Dark Sun Meditation, you will review who the Great Being is in the Dark Sun; what It represents; and Its path. Then, you will learn the benefits of the Dark Sun Meditation; how to perform the Dark Sun Meditation; and becoming One with the Blazing Dark Sun. Where is the Dark Sun?

The actual physical body of the Dark Sun Goddess/God is the dark sun system itself with all its planets, moons, dark sun, and solar sun. As the human body has a solar plexus so does the dark sun system. This is the solar sun. The physical dark sun is located adjacent to the solar sun and is akin to the human heart Night Center. As said before, part of the function of the

dark sun is to channel off excess solar energies from the solar sun. The dark sun Night Center is the heart of the dark sun system and is the focus of the Great Night Entity who is the Living Night Force of the dark sun system. The planets, moons, solar sun, and dark sun are the Night Centers of the physical body of the Dark Sun Goddess/God. Who is the Dark Sun Goddess/God ?

It is difficult to imagine an Entity who is so far ahead of you in magickal evolution, as is the Dark Sun Spirit. Even though I have already discussed the Dark Sun Goddess/God and Its Magickal Nature, let's take the time to review again Its Eternal Nature. It will be important to do so in relation to the Dark Sun Meditation and Night Rites.

The Dark Sun Goddess/God is on an even higher magickal plateau than the Planetary Night Spirits. You can look on the physical dark sun, in relation to the Dark Sun Goddess/God, as similar to yourself and your own heart Night Center. The Dark Sun Goddess/God is Omnipresent, Omniscient, and Omnipotent. Its Radiation effects you and all humankind. You are Its grandchild and a part of your Spirit is shaped by Its Living Presence. It is indeed very difficult to understand a Living Entity who is multidimensional. Its Night Spirit is very much like the physical dark sun itself.

The dark sun pours out life-giving yin light, warmth, and energy to all that lives and grows on the surrounding planets. Its Night Spirit pours out to life: Energy, Warmth, and Night Force. It is the Goddess/God of the dark sun system. It watches over you and sustains the Magickal Light that guides you. Yet, It, too, is advancing on the Magickal Path that leads to the Eternal Night. The only thing is that It is far, far ahead on the very same path that you have just begun to tread. It shows you that you, too, can become all that It is if you but try. You are going to find that meditating on Its Presence, centered in the dark sun, is going to bring you great help magickally and physically.

The power of the dark sun has a truly transforming effect over your physical body. As you practice the Dark Sun Meditation, the power of the dark sun coursing through your body will transform every cell in it. You will find every cell in your body becoming renewed through the Night Energy of the dark sun. The power of the dark sun will transform every cell into a miniature dark sun. The power of the dark sun will bring great Healing Energies into your body. The dark sun will transform every diseased part of your body back into perfect health. Whether you suffer from cancer, or a cold, the power of the dark sun will overcome their effect. The dark sun will bring a truly energizing effect over the body. If you are low on energy, you will not be after the Dark Sun Meditation. These are just the physical effects of the Dark Sun, there are still the magickal effects to consider.

You will find that the Power of the Dark Sun Goddess/God will transport you into the highest of consciousness. You will be able to draw the Power of the Dark Sun Goddess/God into your magickal vehicles and fill them with supercharged Night Energy. The effect upon your more magickal vehicles will be truly amazing. On the Astral, Mental, and Causal Realms, your vehicles will glow with a Yin Light only seen in the Magickal Dark Sun of the Universe. Each vehicle will become a better channel through which the Power of the Night Spirit can flow freely. You become transformed into the Dark Crystal Channel of Yin Light. The constant use of the Dark Sun Meditation will bring truly amazing growth in your magickal vehicles. They will become like the Dark Sun Goddess/God themselves. Now that you see the valuable reasons for doing the Dark Sun Meditation, let's learn how to do it.

Actually, the technique is very easy. You can practice this rite at any time and any place. If you do it outdoors then you should do it in the shade. You will also be able to do this rite at night. This is because the physical energies of the dark sun can penetrate through all things. You will prepare yourself as always by surrounding yourself in the Night Pillar. You should be seated on the ground in whatever manner is most comfortable to you. You should have your legs crossed and your hands open on your legs with palms down during the day and palms up during the night. Then, you begin the actual part of the Dark Sun Meditation.

With your eyes closed, direct your Night Eye so that it is facing up into the Dark Sun. Then you must become very relaxed and allow your thoughts to drift. Now draw into yourself the Power of the Dark Sun. This Power will come to you as a dark ray of intense Night Force filled with Life, Warmth, and Energy. Feel and move this Power down through your body slowly. First, consciously move it into the head and see its effect there. Then move it on into the upper chest and arms. Continue to go on through the body slowly, allowing the total effect of the Power to take place in each part of the body. Then just relax and bathe in the glow of the Power of the Dark Sun. Next, you will move on to the magickal vehicles.

Here, you are going to project yourself consciously towards the dark sun. This is the same technique you used in Mental Projection. You are going to go to the dark sun itself in your magickal vehicles. As you approach the dark sun, you are going to feel the full effects of its

Magickal Power. You are going to keep moving towards the dark sun until you have merged with its Presence. You are going to become a part of the Dark Sun in Night Spirit. Here again, you are going to draw the Power through your magickal vehicles. Feel the Power blazing and coursing through your magickal bodies changing them into miniature Dark Suns.. You should then relax your magickal presence in the Magickal Presence of the Dark Sun. This is where your real Dark Sun Meditation begins.

You are going to become One with the Blazing Dark Sun. You are going to meditate on Its Magickal Presence. The Dark Sun is like your heart Night Center. You will remember that in your own heart Night center is located the miniature Oversoul. It is here you can meet the very Presence of your own Oversoul. It is your Oversoul's magickal anchor in your own world. In the Heart of the dark sun, you can meet the very Presence of the Dark Sun Spirit. Here is the focus of Its Oversoul Consciousness. You can do this only when you have risen to the highest of consciousness. You must know yourself as the Oversoul. It is in the Heart of the Dark Sun, that you can meet the Night Spirit of the Dark System. You must meditate on Its Presence and become all that it is. If you can do this, then you will become One with Its Living Night Spirit and become the Blazing Dark Sun. Then, you must end this meditation.

You do so by slowly withdrawing your magickal consciousness back into your physical body. Do this by concentrating on your breathing. Then you will slowly start to move your fingers and toes. Continue to slowly move all parts of the body until you feel that you are physically whole again. Remember, in closing, to thank the Dark Sun Goddess/God Its Power and Presence in your life. This is the Dark Sun Meditation. The next rite covers something I began to discuss in the last rite.

This is the aspect of the miniature Oversoul in the heart Night Center, or the Inner Cavern of the Dark Sun. You are going to come to know, very well, the fourth Night Center and the Oversoul within it. You are going to build the Inner Cavern of the Dark Sun within the heart Night Center, and learn to enter within it and thereby come into rapport with the Oversoul. Through this, you will learn the power revealed to you in the fourth Night Center. Let's begin with the fourth Night Center and the Dark Sun Spirit found within it.

You will recall from our previous discussion of the fourth Night Center, that as it starts to unfold in you, you become aware of the feelings and emotions in others. You develop genuine magickal empathy with those around you. To those you are really close with, this empathy will extend across vast distances. Distance will make absolutely no difference in the power of your fourth Night Center. I have said before that the heart is the center of your Magickal Being. It is the site of your magickal anchor. I mean, by this, that the silver cord that proceeds out of the heart of your Oversoul is anchored in your heart Night Center. This silver cord is also tied into the sixth Night center, or your Night Eye. In the heart Night Center, at the end of the silver cord, is what you would liken to a miniature dark sun. It is from this miniature dark sun that the energy comes to sustain your physical life. It is this miniature dark sun which is the primary focus of your Oversoul in the material worlds. This miniature dark sun exists on the physical, Astral, Mental, and Causal Realms. Your Oversoul is tied in to all these planes of life and is aware of all that takes place within you on these levels. In the beginning of your progress on Earth, the Oversoul is not very concerned with your lives.

This is because you are shut off from Its Presence and Will. Therefore, the power of this miniature dark sun is very small. The Oversoul will invest very little power and energy into someone who is unconcerned with doing Its Will. But as you begin to listen to the Inner Voice within, and obey Its Will, then the power of the miniature dark sun begins to expand and increase in intensity and brilliance till the dark sun is no longer miniature, but fills the entire being of the Night Magician. Then you become One in the Dark Sun or Night Consciousness. As you entered into the heart of the dark sun and meditated upon the Presence of the Dark Sun Goddess/God so you can enter into the miniature dark sun and enter into rapport and communion with the Oversoul. To come into rapport with the Inner Oversoul, you are going to visualize and build within your heart Night Center, the Inner Cavern of the Dark Sun. You will, as always, enter into your Magician's Study and place yourself in whatever way is a comfortable position. Then, you will place the Night Pillar around you, and relax as much as possible. Next you are going to visualize the place that you would think is appropriate to meet your Oversoul in. You begin by turning your consciousness inward and directing it towards the heart Night Center. You will visualize yourself descending within your Inner Being and finally coming to rest in the heart Night Center. Then envision entering a beautiful cavern. This cavern should be seen so real that you can even smell it. This place should be envisioned with all of your magickal talents. It is a very real place and should be looked upon as such. Once you have the Inner Cavern created, you are ready to enter into the Cavern. As you enter into the Cavern, you see before you a great Night Altar. The Night Altar is made of the purest black

marble. There upon the Night Altar is a great blazing Dark Sun of the Yin Light. The brilliance of the Dark Sun is magnificent. From the Dark Sun, you can feel warmth and energy being beamed at you. You feel a power pulling you closer to the Dark Sun. As you approach closer to the Dark Sun, you begin to see the Image of a Great Being standing within the center of the Dark Sun. As you gaze upon Its Face, you see your face, only it is a face set in power and energy. You can feel the power and glory radiating from the Presence of the Oversoul within the Blazing Dark Sun. Then you will find yourself sitting before the Presence of your Oversoul and receiving instruction from It. You will find yourself bathing in the Power and Energy that is radiating from Its Dark Presence. You will feel knowledge and instruction filling your entire presence. Then, you will know when the time has come to leave the Inner Cavern and return to the outer world. So retrace your steps out of the Inner Cavern of the Dark Sun and find yourself floating back out into the world. You will again, come out of this Night Rite the same as you did the Dark Sun Meditation. Once you have experienced this Night Rite, you will know the Power located within your Inner Being. You will find, through this rite, that whenever you have a question, that you can take it into the Dark Heart of the Oversoul. You can go into the center of the Inner Dark Sun and gain Wisdom and Energy. You can go into the Inner Cavern and find Healing, Understanding, Peace, and Happiness. You need never feel, or be alone in the Presence of the Oversoul. It is here that you will find the center of your life and intelligence. It is here that you will find the center of your Oversoul and the Night Powers. It is this very center of the Night Power that leads you to your next Night Rite, the Night Energy Beam.

You are aware that the physical dark sun, that shines over the world, is a giver of warmth and Yin Light. You have also seen that no matter whether the Dark Sun is a physical or magickal one under discussion, that it gives off immense amounts of Radiation, Yin Light, and Power. You have also found out, that there is a Magickal Dark Sun blazing within the Inner Depths of your Being. The Power and Light that radiates off from your Magickal Dark Sun is very dispersed. The Yin Light radiates off at all angles. What if you could take this Power and Energy and reflect it into a narrow, concentrated beam of the Night Energy? Let's look at a modern day example, the laser.

In the laser, we have turned a normal power and light source into a very concentrated beam of light energy. The laser light is many more times powerful than its origin. This is what you are going to do in this Night Rite. You are going to take the Power and Light that comes from your Inner Magickal Dark Sun, and concentrate it into a very powerful beam of Night Energy. This rite again calls for visualization. You should retire to your Magician's Study until you become adept in the use of the Night Energy. In your Magician's Study, you will find peace and quiet in which to work. As you become adept at its use, you will be able to put this rite into practice no matter where you are. You will begin by visualizing your heart Night Center running parallel with your body. That is, you should envision the Night Center as a large round disk, with a slight curvature in it, placed in front of you like a large shield. Then, you are going to envision, centered in front of the Night Center, the miniature dark sun. Once you have envisioned all of this, then you are ready to transmit the Night Energy. As you envision the Night Center, and the Dark Sun in front of it, the Energy begins to build-up. The Night Energy begins to become concentrated, magnified in intensity, and then, suddenly, will beam forth from your presence. What are you going to do with it?

You are not only the emitter of the Night Energy, but you are also the director of it. Not only visualize the emission of this Night Energy, but you must also visualize its direction and use. The beam will go wherever you direct it. You do not have to be facing in the right direction for it to go where you want it. All you have to do is envision where it is going, with the Consciousness of Oversoul, and it will do so. Now, you must consider its uses. The beam itself is of Pure Night Energy. It is filled with the Oversoul's Energy and Power. The person or situation that it is aimed at, will be filled with the Energy and Power of Oversoul. If the situation or person is basically of the Night Spirit then the beam will not harm the person or situation in any way. It will bring only Energy, Healing, and Happiness to them. But if the person or situation is in a state of inharmony and discord, then the beam of Night Energy will change that. The beam will bring about what the emitter envisions happening. Nothing can resist or fight the Oversoul Energy. It will only magnify and increase in intensity till the change comes about. The beam can also be used as a carrier wave of your Oversoul Direction. Whatever you project, in Night Consciousness, into the beam, the beam will bring into manifestation. If someone is trying to hurt you with harmful energy, you can direct the beam at the harmful energy sent, and change it into Night Energy and return it to its source, even if you do not know who the source is. This is the Night Rite of the Night Energy Beam. So far, you have been in the Night Presence of the Dark Sun Goddess/God, you have been in the miniature

Dark Sun, and have learned to direct the Energy of the Night. Now, you are going to become a Dark Sun.

You are going to develop the Magician's Night Body and become a Dark Sun. The Magician's Night Body is, indeed, unique. You have meditated on the Presences of the Dark Sun Goddess/God and Personal Oversoul, and thus it should be well rooted in you, the feeling of being a Dark Sun. In developing the Magician's Night Body, begin by dwelling on the Eternal Presences of the Dark Sun Goddess/God and Oversoul. You must become filled with Their Energy and Substance. The Yin Light for your Magician's Night Body will come from your heart Night Center. See the Yin Light filling your entire being, that is, physical, emotional, mental, and magickal. The Light that you are going to become is exceedingly dark. Yet it is so intense that it glows. You have, thus, prepared yourself as to the Nature of a Dark Sun, the Yin Light of a Night, and the Shape of your Night Body. You are ready, then, to begin visualizing your Magician's Night Body. You will visualize your Night Body as an intense, pulsating, glowing Body of the Night. As your Body begins to take shape, you lose awareness of your human form. You are becoming the Dark Sun of the Night. You are beautiful, luminescent, and radiant. You are filled with a Radiance of the Night Spirit's Energy and Power. And so, filled with the very Essence of the Dark Sun, you repeat this invocation:

"I am the Night Soul that glows in the darkness of the night. I am Night Energy and all those who gaze on me become the like. I am the Pure Essence of the Oversoul in the form of a Dark Sun. I am no longer feeling the material form. I am becoming transcendent and translucent and know myself as Pure Night Energy. I am not this physical form but a Body of Pure Night Energy. I am the Night Magician, Eternal in the Light of the Night Spirit. I AM the Night Magician within my Night Body."

You have become a Dark Sun of the Night Spirit. You are Pure Energy. Your visualization has become much more. You are no longer just visualizing but have become the Dark Sun in Magickal Reality. You are the Night Magician physically, emotionally, mentally, and magickally. You are a Dark Sun that shines in the night of your world. These are the four Night Rites.

They were exercises in the Dark Sun of the Night Spirit. They were Rites carried out under Night Consciousness. They are presented here to give you practice in becoming the Dark Sun of your life. If you use these Night Rites with dedication, perseverance, and practice them often, you will become the Dark Sun of the Night Spirit. In the next subject, you will combine your knowledge and use of the Night Powers, Flames, and Rites into Night Healing.

#### 47. Night Healing

Earlier I presented the subject of healing through the use of color energy. The type of healing I will present here is infinitely more potent. Night Healing involves the very Healing Power of the Night Spirit. Night Healing is simple to learn but difficult to practice. To practice Night Healing, you are going to have to reach Night Consciousness. Night Consciousness is the key to Night Healing. Before I go much further into Night Healing, let's discuss the subjects you will have to learn which make up Night Healing.

In learning Night Healing, I am going to discuss the Seventh Night Power, Invocation, Meditation, the Night Body, Night Energy Beam, and the Green Flame. Therefore, since there are so many Magickal Tools that you will use in combination with each other, let's start from the beginning using Invocation, Meditation, and the Seventh Night Power. This may seem a review and in a way it is. You have already covered every subject just mentioned, but it is the way that you put them together that brings about Night Healing. You are going to recover each subject lightly, and as you do so, you will be putting them together to form Night Healing.

You begin, as always, by entering your Magician's Study and darkening the room. Then either sit or lie down just so that whatever your choice is, you are as comfortable as possible. You will then relax as much as possible; put the Night Pillar around yourself; and practice Night Breathing for a few minutes. When you are ready, begin with Invocation.

Your invocation, as always, must be directed towards your Oversoul. You are going to visualize your Oversoul at the other end of the silver cord. You are going to use the silver cord as you would use a telegraph line. You are going to first envision what it is that you are going to heal. Is it a person or animal? Is it something internally wrong or external? If it is something wrong and you're not quite sure what it is, that's alright. The Oversoul can heal what's wrong whether you know what's wrong or not. You are going to envision your very simple message traveling up the silver cord and being received by the Oversoul. As you send the message, not only should you envision it, but you should say it aloud. You will remember from the topic on the Power of Sound what saying your message aloud will do. You should say the invocation at least three times. You must keep the invocation simple and concise. A simple invocation might be as follows:

"I am the Night Presence of the Oversoul. I call upon that Presence to pass through me and to (person's name or thing to be healed). The (person or thing) requires the Healing Power of the Night Oversoul to correct the (wrong or name the specific condition). As I am performing the act of Night Healing raise me into your Night Consciousness and let the healing be done. So be it."

Through the power of this invocation you have already begun the Magick of Night Healing. You have begun your ascent into Night Consciousness. Next, you will enter into Meditation. Your meditation is going to be upon the Healing Oversoul. Let's picture the Healing Oversoul as you have always pictured the Oversoul, only you are going to add an Emerald Green Light around Its Presence. This Emerald Green Light surrounds the Oversoul as does the Yin Light. Feel and know the Healing Power of the Emerald Green Light wherein is contained the Green Flame of Night Healing. Go on and enter directly into the Presence of the Oversoul and become the Oversoul and Emerald Healing Power that surrounds It. Then you are going to take your meditation into the Seventh Night Power.

You are going to do more than just meditate upon the Presence of the Oversoul. You are going to know yourself as the Healing Oversoul. Its Consciousness and yours are One. You are the Healing Oversoul and the Emerald Healing Power. You know, feel, and are the Oversoul. All that the Oversoul is, you are. Its very Nature is revealed before you. Its Power, Energy, and Healing Energy is yours to use for you are the Healing Oversoul. Thus, you have invoked the Seventh Night Power and have become the Emerald Crystal Tool of the Magickal Master. The Emerald Light of the Oversoul pours through your nature and transforms you into the Healing Oversoul. Now, you are ready to take on the Night Body.

As you have entered into Night Consciousness, your very Essence has become radiant and luminescent with the Magickal Yin Light. You have become, again, the Dark Sun of the Oversoul. You are the Dark Goddess/God. You know yourself as the Pure Energy of the Night Spirit. You are no longer a physical being but have become etherial in nature. Again, you invoke the Hymn of the Night:

"I am the Dark Sun that radiates Night Energy in the night. I am filled with Darkness and Energy and all those who gaze on me become the like. I am the Pure Essence of Oversoul in the form of the Dark Sun. I am no longer feeling the material form. I have become transcendent and translucent and know myself as Pure Night Energy. I am not this physical form but a Body of Pure Yin Light. I AM the Night Magician, Eternal in the Light of the Night Spirit. I AM the Night Magician."

You have become the Oversoul. You are totally ready in Consciousness and Form to use the Healing Power of the Night. Thus, you turn to the use of the Night Energy Beam and the Green Night Flame.

To activate and use the Night Energy Beam, you must turn within to the Heart of your Night Being. You are going to envision yourself as a great Silver Night Disk. In front of the Night Disk is the Blazing Sun of the Oversoul. The Night Force begins to concentrate, magnify, and intensify, until you release it in a narrow Beam of Night Energy. Again, you will remember that your Night Consciousness directs the Beam to the receiver. This is the person you are going to heal. Now is the time you are going to invoke the Green Night Flame. From out of the Oversoul comes the Green Flame. It is a Flame of Dazzling Emerald Green. It is the Power of the Night Spirit Healing. The Green Flame brings Healing to all people and all conditions, and thus you invoke:

"By the Power of the Presence of the Oversoul within the Night Heart, I am invoking the Green Flame of the Oversoul Healing. I am seeing this Green Flame of the Oversoul Healing filling my Night Being. I AM seeing it before the Great Silver Night Disk becoming concentrated, magnified, and intensified until it glows as an Emerald Green Night."

Thus, by the Oversoul Will, you release the Emerald Green Flame and direct it onto the Night Energy Beam. You are using the Beam as a carrier for the Green Flame of the Night Spirit Healing. There is a twin action taking place in the person being healed. There is the action of the Night Energy in the Beam and also the action of the Green Flame. These Twin Energies of the Oversoul will bring about the desired action of Magickal Healing. The action of the Oversoul Healing is instantaneous, if the Night Healing is carried out in Night Consciousness. This is Night Healing.

You have put together the things that you have been learning and practicing into a very valuable technique for healing. If you have been studying and practicing with constancy and perseverance, then your success at Night Healing will be excellent. Night Healing is the Universal Cure for all ills. You will be able to apply a very similar technique, as used here, in obtaining physical Immortality.

48. Immortality: Transmigration and Transmutation

Immortality has been a subject discussed many, many times over the ages. When I speak of Immortality there is generally two ways that it can be viewed. The first is the Immortality of the physical form. The physical body can be Eternal and live forever. This has perpetuated the myths of the Fountain of Youth and the Philosopher's Stone of the Ancient Alchemists. The second is the Immortality of the soul. That is, after physical death, the personality continues to live on forever in the Night Realm. It is the idea that "I who am I will always be I, now and forever". I am going to discuss both types. The emphasis will be on the Immortality of the physical body. That is, I consider it to be the most important. Let's begin the discussion with transmigration.

Transmigration is the transference of the soul or personality from one physical body to another without the normal rest between lives associated with in reincarnation. The body, the soul transfers to, may be of a newly born infant or one of more advanced age. Transmigration is also the entry by a disembodied Night Teacher into a body of advance age. The age being determined by what is available and what is needed by the disembodied Night Teacher. This is not so far-out as it may seem.

We have discussed many times that you are not the physical body, but the emotional, mental, and magickal nature of being. The physical body is only a house in which you reside. It is a special vehicle created especially for you to operate through here on Earth. As Shakespeare said, "All the world is a stage and you are but the actor on it." You are acting out a certain part while you are here and the physical body is nothing more than a costume in which to appear and act in. So, transmigration is simply changing from one costume and role, to another costume and role. It is simply entering a new house which is about to be vacated by its old occupant. The how's of transmigration are not so difficult to understand.

I have spoke of the silver cord many times. It is your life line from your Oversoul to you. The silver cord is anchored into your physical heart. You know from Astral Projection that you can leave the body at night and travel in many other realms. The physical body continues to live only because the silver cord is still attached to it in the heart. In transmigration, you remove the silver cord from the old residence, which dies, and move it to the new residence where it is anchored into the new heart. At the very same time, the former occupant, who was resident in the body that is about to be newly inhabited, is removed and set free into the Astral Realm. This is a very delicate procedure. It may be easy to imagine, but it is difficult to perform. There are very special Astral Night Spirits who are especially trained to perform such a magickal operation. The procedure is basically the same for a disembodied Night Teacher wanting a physical body. There are very special considerations that have to be taken, before transmigration can take place.

First of all, the person giving up the body that is about to be newly occupied, must voluntarily want to do so. It cannot be done against their will. There are many reasons why s/he may want to do so. The person may be very tired of living on Earth. Her/His life may have been a very difficult one and s/he feels there is very little left for her/him in life. This person may even be contemplating suicide. In another case, the person may have almost completed what s/he came into the world to accomplish and death may soon happen even though the body may be in good health. Therefore, before letting suicide occur in the first case, or natural death in the other, the individual is approached, while s/he is in the Astral, about going through transmigration. If s/he consents to the transfer then it can be done. This is not an easy way out for the possible suicide. It is her/his chance for doing something very worth while in life. There is another consideration that must be met; the basic frequencies must be the same or closely similar.

Not everyone is a suitable candidate for transmigration. The person leaving, and the person entering, must be closely related in basic vibration. This does not mean that they must be of the same magickal level. Everyone has a basic frequency that is akin to the frequency of a musical note. It is a frequency that is set from the Nature of the Oversoul. If the frequencies of the two are very close, then the transfer can take place.

There are many reasons why transmigration would be necessary. For example, if a person had worked all their life at a very special project that would do much towards the advancement of humankind, but s/he had not quite finished and the span of her/his body was about to expire, what would or could s/he do? By special arrangement through the Night Guild s/he could undergo transmigration. This could occur before the life span of the old body was finished or shortly after bodily death. The control of transmigration is in the hands of the World Directors. Suppose now, that the Night Guild needed to put one of its Emissaries in the world. They want her/him there now and functioning in her/his task. This is another use of transmigration. Now it is time to consider another form of Immortality.

This is transmutation. The definition of transmutation is "to change". You are going to

transmute or change the substance of your physical body into the Oversoul Body. To begin with, this process is threefold. It deals with the transmutation of your physical body and your emotional and mental attitudes. The discussion will deal with all three, and we'll start with the physical.

The transmutation of the physical begins with proper diet. You must eat correctly. You must have the proper diet that provides you with the best of health. You must not overeat anything to excess. The best diet is one that eliminates all meat. You must have the proper amounts of exercise and rest. You must keep your body clean. The rule is to treat the body with respect and proper care. This is the beginning of the transmutation of the physical body and is followed by the transmutation of your emotions.

You must feel young, alive, and vibrant. You must feel the eternalness of being young. You must feel the very Youth of the Oversoul flowing through you. It is essential that you manifest only thoughts of being alive in the Oversoul. If you feel young, you are young. If you feel alive and ready for any challenge by the world, then you will remain in perpetual youth forever. The only thing that causes you to grow old is the negative emotions that you allow to enter into your world. You grow old through worry, tension, and anger. If you keep your emotions centered in the Oversoul, then you shall become Immortal. Not only is feeling Immortal important, but thinking Immortal is of the utmost importance.

Your thoughts must be centered in the Oversoul Mind. Not only do you feel alive and vibrant, but you know that you are. Your thoughts are not troubled by the concerns of the world, for those concerns shall find their own solutions. Your thoughts are centered on the Immortal Oversoul, and you know that you are the Immortal Oversoul. When you know that you are Immortal, and feel Immortal, then there is only one thing left to do, and that is to apply your Night Powers and Flames to your Immortality.

The application for the use of the Night Powers and Flames is very similar to what you learned in Night Healing. You will begin with Invocation, in telling your Oversoul that you are going to use both the Green Flame of the Night Spirit Healing and the Night Flame to reach Immortality. Then, you will move into the next phase, that of meditation and the Seventh Night Power. You will use the same meditation on both the subjects of Healing and Immortality. You already have learned how to do it for Healing. You then will begin with meditation on Immortality. You shall dwell on the Immortal Oversoul within you. Then, you shall take this meditation into the Seventh Night Power.

Thus, you shall do more than just meditate on Immortality, you shall come to know the very essence of Immortality. You shall absorb that essence of Immortality into your Inner Awareness and become Immortal. So first, the meditation on the Healing Oversoul, then the meditation on the Immortal Oversoul. You take both of these meditations into the Seventh Power and you are ready to continue, in Night Consciousness, with the Night Body. You will use the very same procedure in acquiring the Night Body as I have outlined in Night Healing. Since this is Self-healing and Immortality that you are learning, you will omit the use of the Night Energy Beam. You are going to retain the Energies of the Night Flames. Then, you will continue the procedure, by invoking the Emerald Green Flame as you did in the last topic. Once you have used the Green Flame sufficiently, as to feel cleansed of all imperfections and afflictions, then you are ready to invoke the Black Flame. The invocation for the Black Flame in this case is as follows:

"I am the Presence of the Oversoul and I am invoking the powerful Black Night Flame to transmute the human body to an Eternal Oversoul Body. I behold the Night Flame entering within my three material forms and Purifying, Transmuting, and being made wholly into the Night Soul of Life. I am filled with the Transmuting Night Flame that is changing my material form into the Everlasting Form of the Oversoul. I am Eternal in the Oversoul; that which I am shall never experience physical death again; I AM Immortal as the Oversoul in the Oversoul Body. So be it."

Then, you shall bathe in the Black Night Flame, until you have become Bodily Immortal in the Oversoul. This is transmutation. You are Immortal in Soul and can be in material form.

Whether you are able to achieve the Immortality of your mortal form or not, you are forever Immortal in Soul and Night Spirit. You are very close to the end of Fire Magick. You have come a very long way on the road of Night Magick. Yet, in Magickal Reality, you have only begun to learn a small portion of the lore of Night Magick. You have only just begun the trek towards Home. Still, there must be an ending to your first studies in Night Magick, so I will close with the final topic on the past, present, and future of Night Magicians.

#### 49. Night Magicians: Past, Present, and Future

This is the concluding topic in the lore of Night Magick. You have gone through all the

elements of Night Magick. You have covered Earth, Water, Air, and Fire and have learned the basics of each. Yet, in actuality, you have hardly scratched the surface. You have only just begun to learn Night Magick. There is still so much more to learn.

There is no end to the body of knowledge that is Night Magick. You must always search for knowledge and wisdom wherever it may be, for this is Night Magick. No Night Magician ever stops learning or comes to know it all. You will always be unfolding the Night Powers that lie within you. For your final topic, as in the beginning, I would like to speak once more about Night Magicians.

I would like to present the Night Magicians of the past, giving their origin, purpose, and names; of the present, again speaking of their origin and purpose; the future, taking a glimpse of what might be. To begin this presentation, I would like to discuss the Night Magicians of the Past. In the beginning of distant civilization the Dragon Tiamat taught humankind the knowledge and wisdom of Night Magick. Civilizations flourished under Night Magick and the Earth was a beautiful and wonderful place. Then came the invasion by the Yang and the destruction of the Yin civilizations. But even among the Yang gods and goddesses there were the Yin.

Among the gods and goddesses were Set, Isis, Nuit, Loki, Pan, Cybele, Hecate, Kali, Bacchus, and others who were known to give the other gods and goddesses trouble. Among humankind the Night Religions and Night Magick continued.

There are the worshippers and practitioners of the dark religions of the above listed gods and goddesses. There are also the ancient religions of the Druids and the North and South American Indians. There are the religions of Africa and other so-called dark continents. There is Voodoo. Many of these continue to remain in existence today. There are also individual practitioners of the past.

There are Night Magicians such as Abra Melin, and Abraham the Jew, Cagliostro, Althotas, Comte de Sainte-Germain, Aleister Crowley, Baian, Jeanne Belloc, Dr. Lamb, Marie Le Normand, Henry Cornelius Agrippa, Paracelsus, Jacob Boehme, Eliphas Levi, Marie Laveau, Alexander Seton, and William Butler Yeats.

There are also Night Magicians of the present, but I cannot name them here. This is still very much a Yang world with great hatred for those devoted to the world of Night Magick. So all I will say is that Night Magicians can be found in all walks of life. There are no barriers to those of the Night World. What all Night Magicians have in common is the preparation for the future.

The future of humankind is bleak. With the pollution and rape of this world by humankind the Earth will soon rid itself of much of the cancer that is causing its death. There are many predictions about when this period of life is going to happen. Prophets have been forecasting this event and the time of its happening for ages. But determining the exact date of this happening is like trying to forecast the first snowfall of the winter. There are a great deal of things that determine when it will first snow, and so with this event. I can say that some of the signs of this happening have already begun to manifest.

There has been an increasingly large number of natural disasters. There has and will continue to be a large number of shifts going on within the Earth. This will give earthquakes, volcanoes, and the rising and lowering of land. There will be terrible storms that will cause widespread destruction. There will be flooding, extremes of heat and cold, draughts and all kinds of out of the ordinary weather changes. There will be a great deal of panic and terror among the citizenry. The skies will have a very unusual glow to them and be of a reddish black hue. There will be great shifts in the land with some rising and others falling. Some of the land will be covered with water and other portions, currently under water, will rise up into the open air. Not only will the land be undergoing a major shift, but there will also be political and social upheaval. This is a time of the Earth's balancing the large amounts of karma that humankind has created. It is a time of correcting the harm that humankind has done to the body of the planet itself. This is not presented here to bring panic and fear into anyone's heart. It is presented in an explicit manner so you can do something about it.

Futures don't have to be written in stone. They can be changed. You can help the future to change by practicing Night Magick. It is a way of preparing yourself for the changes about to take place. There is much you have learned in Night Magick that can help you prepare. You could use psychometry to find a safe place to be when the trouble begins. You can learn to give the Earth healing energy and give back to it vitality it has lost. You can stop any destructive practices which cause further harm to the Earth. You can be part of many voices trying to change the way the Earth is slowly being destroyed. You can use Night Magick to influence those who make decisions. The future is an odd thing.

Sometimes you can look forward and feel what is ahead, but it is always based upon the probabilities, or possibilities that will open up before you. If you could stand high upon a

mountain and look at your future, it would seem like there are many roads that lay before you and all the choices that determine which road you take are yours to choose. You would find that even from your lofty height, you could not see the end of the road you chose, or its outcome. But one road you have already chosen will insure a bright future. Of course this is the Night Road of a Night Magician.

To travel the Night Road you must have a desire to learn and a willingness to experiment. You must be adventurous and love excitement and the unusual. You must be willing to be tested and trials will come your way. But the outcome of traveling the Night Road leads to victory in life. The Night Road leads to the Night Magician's Dream.

#### **A Night Magician's Dream**

Picture if you will a Land of Enchantment; a Land of Honor, Strength, and Energy. The Land of the Night Magicians. This is the Land in which your dreams evolve from within. Reality is seen through your Night Eye and felt through your Night Heart. You are as rich as your Soul is in the Eternal Night. You are as young as the Oversoul is within you. Search within your heart, within the Heart of Creativity, and become the Living Oversoul. The Night Magician is, knows, and becomes all. They exist within all things; such is the Night Consciousness of the Oversoul in them. They are free of self-limitations and control the world of form, and the things found in it. They are Pure in Night Spirit. They transcend all things: space, time, and the world around them.

Believe as you will; what you are is all that is; what you will be is limited by yourself; this is your creed and your life as it is within you. No longer bound by the limitations of a Yang, past world, you are the Progress of a New Age, an Age of the Night World. You are the Foundation of Time and Space. You are the Strength of the Night Spirit. If only in the hearts of all, you were what you felt when you dream, then there could exist no wrong ideas.

There is potential in thought and ideas, and it is for Humanity to bring them out of the Void. Only Humanity can be what they believe their selves to be. They cannot be what they don't believe is possible to be. Freedom begins in thought and when Manifest in Action can be Truth as the Night Spirit sees the Truth: focused on a Point in Time; balanced on the Edge of Infinity. Believe in yourself and your ability to succeed in all things. Only you control you; only you can find happiness; only you make the destiny that lies before you. You are a Channel for the Eternal Night; use this right, and bring forth into your world the Energy of the Night and make Humanity what They can be as the Night Spirit Wills. You are the strength of the Earth and only you can open the Doorway to your Success. Be what you Believe, and be what you can be, for no one can limit, another. You can only limit Yourself. The challenge of life is to know thyself; to know how one limits another, and how to be all you can be in life and Night Magick. The Night Magician is the Knower, the Doer, and is the Night Spirit within all things. There Responsibility lies with the Night Spirit and the Oversoul. They are the Heart of all things, bringing Humanity into harmony with Nature, and the world into harmony with the Night Spirit.

You are the One who becomes Your Dreams; who is unlimited by Your Energy for all things, for Your Energy is Boundless and Eternal. No longer in this world is the Door shut to this One; the One who has become the Night Magician.

## **APPENDIXES**

### **APPENDIX A**

#### **INVOCATIONS, HYMNS, POEMS, AND PRAYERS**

##### **1. Invocation for the Night Magician's Pillar of Protection.**

I am a Night Magician surrounded in a Pillar of Night Energy that cannot be penetrated. It repels all energy that would harm me. It repels all thoughts and emotional energy of my enemies. Through the Power of my Oversoul, I am protected in a Pillar of Night Energy and cannot be harmed. May this Night Pillar remain around me at all times keeping me out of harms way. So be it.

##### **2. Ritual Invocations**

Each ritual will begin by your stepping into the Night Circle and putting on your Night Weapons and Cape. After this place the Night Pillar around you. Do not leave the Circle until the end of the ritual and be sure and re-enforce the Night Pillar around and through you before leaving the Night Circle. Go through the actions of consecrating the Night Circle with earth, water, air, and fire each time. Fill the chalice, say the invocation, and drink the wine each time. Then always ring the bell and summon the Night Deities. These are the basic procedures you will begin each ritual which takes place within the Night Circle.

Now pick up the bell and ring it six times in each major direction, that is North, South, East and West. Then repeat the following invocation, "I who am (give your Night Name) summon the Presence of all Deities in the Night Force to attend my ritual of Eternal Night. We now stand in the Eternal Night beyond time and space. Come and witness my Ritual of the Night". After this, pick up the salt container, and repeat the following: "By my sacred name, (give your Night Name), through the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Earth Deities, I invoke the Earth Night Power into this container of salt and now place the salt upon the earth to mark the boundary of my sacred circle." Visualize the Earth Deities filling the vessel with their power. Pinch a little salt lightly between your fingers dropping it on the floor over the cord going completely around the circle. **BE CAREFUL NOT TO STEP OUTSIDE THE CIRCLE FOR THE REMAINDER OF THE RITUAL.** Place the salt container back on the Night Altar and pick up the crystal bowl of water.

Repeat the following: "May the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Water Deities fill this water and container and endow it with the Water Night Power." Visualize the Water Deities of the Earth filling the vessel with the power. With your left hand dip it into the water and sprinkle lightly the boundary you have already marked with the salt. Place the water bowl back on the altar and pick up the incense burner. Repeat the following: "Let the Presence of the Four Winds of the Earth enter into the incense burner filling it with Air Night Power". Now face each direction, rotating counterclockwise, and see the Presence of each Wind Deity enter into the incense burner. Then circle four times in a counterclockwise manner around and within the Magick Circle. Place the incense burner back on the Night Altar and pick up the candle.

Repeat the following: "May the Presence of my Oversoul and the Fire Deities of the Earth place their sacred flame here within my candles and upon my Night Altar." See the Fire Deities come and dance around the flames and upon your altar. Place the candle back where it came from and pick up the chalice of wine or juice. Repeat the following: "Let the Presence of my Oversoul and the Eternal Darkness enter into the liquid and fill it with the Power of the Eternal Night. May this elixir give me strength, healing, and courage each day of my life." Feel the Power flow through you and into the chalice. See the energy collect and concentrate till the chalice glows with Night Energy.

Now face each direction and repeat the following: "Thank you Night Deities for your attendance at this sacred Night Rite. May we ever serve the Eternal Powers of Darkness here on Earth and the Omniverse forever. So be it."

At this point stop and re-enforce your Night Pillar and then take off all your Night Weapons and place them back upon the Night Altar. Leave the cord in place on the floor.

### 3. Invocation to Night Magick.

I, (give your Night Name), commit my all to the Oversoul and the Night Spirit within, and to the dedication of my Magickal Energies to the practice of Night Magick. I dedicate myself to the Oversoul within and to my union with it in Night Consciousness. May these Night Tools and Weapons serve me ever in this cause. So be it.

### 4. Invocation to the Cosmic Being of the (insert-direction).

I invoke the Great Powers of the Cosmic Being of the (insert direction) to flow into my being. Fill me with the Cosmic Power of (insert element). Renew me in the Power of Night Consciousness. Make me a Being of Cosmic Yin Light. Guide me upon the Road of Night Magick."

### 5. Invocation for Night Projection.

On this day \_\_\_, I am going to Night Project. I am going to travel in the Astral Realm and remember all that I see and do. I will recall all of this after I have returned to my body. This I will do and won't fail."

### 6. Night Invocation on Earth.

Let the Earth be filled with the Presence of the Night. I honor the Presence of the Night in all I say and do. By the Night all things are given, by the Night all enemies removed. By the Yin Light of the Moon I shall walk the Night Road on Earth in power, and glory and victory forever. So be it.

### 7. Hymn of the Nights.

I am the Dark Sun that radiates Night Energy in the night. I am filled with Darkness and Energy and all those who gaze on me become the like. I am the Pure Essence of Oversoul in the form of the Dark Sun. I am no longer feeling the material form. I have become transcendent and translucent and know myself as Pure Night Energy. I am not this physical form but a Body of Pure Yin Light. I AM the Night Magician, Eternal in the Light of the Night Spirit. I AM the Night Magician.

### 8. Invocation for the Night Body.

I am the Night Soul that glows in the darkness of the night. I am Night Energy and all those who gaze on me become the like. I am the Pure Essence of the Oversoul in the form of a Dark Sun. I am no longer feeling the material form. I am becoming transcendent and translucent and know myself as Pure Night Energy. I am not this physical form but a Body of Pure Night Energy. I am the Night Magician, Eternal in the Light of the Night Spirit. I AM the Night Magician within my Night Body.

9. Invocation for Night Healing.

I am the Night Presence of the Oversoul. I call upon that Presence to pass through me and to (person's name or thing to be healed). The (person or thing) requires the Healing Power of the Night Oversoul to correct the (wrong or name the specific condition). As I am performing the act of Night Healing raise me into your Night Consciousness and let the healing be done. So be it.

10. Invocation for Transmutation by the Black Night Flame.

I am the Presence of the Oversoul and I am invoking the powerful Black Night Flame to transmute the human body to an Eternal Oversoul Body. I behold the Night Flame entering within my three material forms and Purifying, Transmuting, and being made wholly into the Night Soul of Life. I am filled with the Transmuting Night Flame that is changing my material form into the Everlasting Form of the Oversoul. I am Eternal in the Oversoul; that which I am shall never experience physical death again; I AM Immortal as the Oversoul in the Oversoul Body. So be it.

11. Invocation of the Black Night Flame.

By the Presence of the Oversoul within me I am invoking the Great Black Flame of the Oversoul's Purity and Perfection through me. I AM seeing this Black Flame descending from above and filling my being with Its Essence and Power. I AM then placing it here before me on the Altar of the Night, there to collect and concentrate into a blazing Night Black Flame. Now, oh blazing Night Black Flame, I AM commanding thee by the Power of the Presence of the Oversoul in me, to obey my Will as the Oversoul on Earth.

12. Invocation of the Violet Night Flame.

I AM the Oversoul on Earth and I AM invoking the Violet Night Flame of Transmutation. I AM seeing this Violet Night Flame descending from my own Night Soul and entering within me transmuting all that I AM into the Night Soul. All negation and inharmony is removed from by being and replaced with Pure Night Energy. I AM the Violet Night Flame and all who see with me are alive with the Violet Night Flame and so Transmuted, Purified and forever Free.

13. Invocation of the Blue Night Flame.

I AM the Oversoul on Earth, and I AM invoking the Peace and Harmony of the Blue Night Flame. I AM seeing this Blue Flame of the Night Spirit's Peace and Harmony descending out of my the Night Soul and into that which I AM. I AM focusing this Blue Flame here before me on the Altar of the Nights. I AM the Blue Night Flame here in Oversoul Action giving Peace and Harmony to all.

14. Invocation of the Green Night Flame.

By the Power of the Presence of the Oversoul within the Night Heart, I am invoking the Green Flame of the Oversoul Healing. I am seeing this Green Flame of the Oversoul Healing filling my Night Being. I AM seeing it before the Great Silver Night Disk becoming concentrated, magnified, and intensified until it glows as an Emerald Green Night.

15. Invocation of the Yellow Night Flame.

Through the Night Oversoul within me I AM invoking the Power of the Night Flame of Wisdom and Intelligence. I AM filled with these three Magickal Qualities and know, and see, all that the Night Soul sees. And I AM surrounding myself and the world around me in the Yellow Night Flame of Wisdom and Intelligence.

16. Invocation of the Orange Night Flame.

I draw from out of the sun the Orange Night Flame. With this Night Flame I empower the world around me with energy. I Am protected from the Orange Night Flame by the Power of the Night.

17. Invocation of the Red Night Flame.

Through the Presence of the Oversoul in me and the Power of the Night Guild I AM commanding the Red Flame of the Night into my world and being. I AM the Red Flame of the Night in Action on Earth today and forever.

18. Invocation of the Rainbow Night Flame.

I AM the composite of the Night Flames in Action on Earth. I AM the Night Soul in Consciousness and by the Night Consciousness I AM invoking the Total Power of the Night Flames embodied in the Rainbow Flame. I AM commanding this Night Flame into existence

by the Will of the Eternal Darkness. And by my Oversoul Consciousness the Rainbow Flame is sustained and placed into Night Action by Night Direction. I AM the Action of the Rainbow Flame. I AM the Rainbow Night Flame.

#### **APPENDIX B**

##### **CANDLE COLOR COMBINATION AND THE NIGHT TEACHERS**

Candle color is arranged by the basic force the Night Teachers are aligned with. Remember that the two front candles are always black for the second Water Rite. So here is the color candles to use with the particular force and teachers.

Use midnight blue and red candles for the First Force of the Will and Power of the Night Spirit. This includes the Keeper Asmodeus and Azazel, Leviathan, Santanas, and Amon.

Use two midnight blue candles for the Second Force of the Wisdom of the Night Spirit. This includes the Keeper Kali and Lucifuge Rofocale, Belial, and Azael.

Use two black candles for the Third Force of the Energy of the Night Spirit. This includes the Keeper Baal and Endor, Abraxas, and Balan.

Use two red candles for the Fourth Force of Balance, Dignity, and Purity. This includes the Keeper Lilith and Astaroth, Nisroch, and Bensozia.

Use two yellow candles for the Fifth Force of Knowledge. This includes the Keeper Dagon and Agares, John Dee, Bifrons, Belphegor, and Alocer.

Use red and violet candles for the Sixth Force of Devotion. This includes the Keeper Lucifer and Moloch, Astartes, and Marie Laveau.

Use two violet candles for the Seventh Force of Beauty and Action of the Night Spirit. This includes the Keeper Hecate and Aleister Crowley, Armida, Cagliostro, Baphomet, and Eliphas Levi.